

中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书

英 语

《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》编写组 编著

電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京 • BEIJING

内 容 简 介

本书以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》和历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试说明及发展趋势为依据，并结合中等职业学校学生的实际需要编写。全书共分四个部分：第一部分是“英语知识运用”，对语法中的每一个知识点进行了系统分析，在编写体例上做到考点明晰、重点突出。第二部分是“答题策略”，包括应试技巧、案例分析和专项训练三个模块，本部分按照考试说明规定的题型及难度系数编写，力求技巧实用、分析到位、训练全面。第三部分是“综合训练”，共有四套综合训练题，以不同的难度系数、科学的考点设置，让学生考前得到有效的规范训练。第四部分是“参考答案”。

本书的编写力求知识系统、重点突出、目标明确，旨在帮助参加春季招生考试的考生提高应试成绩。

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。
版权所有，侵权必究。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书. 英语/《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》编写组编著. —北京：电子工业出版社，2018.10
ISBN 978-7-121-35016-0

I. ①中… II. ①中… III. ①英语课—中等专业学校—升学参考资料 IV. ①G634

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2018）第 209175 号

责任编辑：崔汝泉 特约编辑：陈迪
印 刷：山东汇文印务有限公司
装 订：山东汇文印务有限公司
出版发行：电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036

开 本：787×1 092 1/16 印张：12.25 字数：375 千字
版 次：2018 年 10 月第 1 版
印 次：2018 年 10 月第 1 次印刷
定 价：36.80 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题，请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺，请与本社发行部联系，联系及邮购电话：（010）88254888，88258888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zltz@phei.com.cn，盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

本书咨询联系方式：（010）88254407。

丛书前言



《中等职业学校考试复习指导丛书》是根据当前职业教育改革发展的形势，为适应中等职业学校广大教师和学生的需要，组织富有经验的专家、骨干教师编写的一套考试复习指导丛书。本丛书包括语文、数学和英语三个分册。

丛书的编写是以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》为依据，以山东省职业教育教材审定委员会审定的中等职业教育规划教材为主要参考，参照山东省近几年普通高校招生（春季）考试说明，结合山东省的实际情况，广泛征询了广大考生和教师的意见，并吸取当前教学改革的先进成果而编写的。在编写时，我们力求基础知识的整合与系统，强化能力训练，突出对学生解题思路和方法的引导，使学生学会分析问题和解决问题，提高学习能力和应对考试的能力。在内容编排上，三本书的模块大致为：复习要点，即明确需要掌握的知识点及其相关联系，提出复习的要求；解题示例，即选择典型例题、考试试题或某一类题型，分析总结规律，引导学生举一反三，掌握解题技巧；基础训练，即根据近几年本学科考试的主要内容，精心设计了一定数量的练习题，供学生们选择，训练，巩固知识，提高能力；模拟考试，参照历年春季高考的试题，设计了3~6套模拟考试题，用于学生强化训练，检测复习效果。同时，在采用统一模块的前提下，三门学科根据各自的特点，突出学科特色，体现灵活性。因此，本丛书具有较强的针对性、指导性和实用性，便于教师的指导和学生的系统复习，希望能对中等职业学校学生的日常学习及复习考试等方面有所帮助和指导。

由于时间仓促，水平有限，书中难免有不足之处，恳望广大师生在使用过程中提出宝贵意见，以便日后修改和完善。

编写组
2018年7月



前言



本书以教育部颁发的《中等职业学校文化基础课程教学大纲》（教职成[2009] 7号）和历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试及发展趋势为依据，针对各类参加春季招生考试学生的实际情况，本着以考试说明为指导，以提高学生英语知识的综合运用能力为原则编写而成。

编写目标：

1. 明确各知识点的考查范围，了解其考查角度，自查对各知识点的掌握程度；
2. 熟悉不同题型的答题技巧，提高解题能力；
3. 强化考前的规范训练，避免非智力性失误。

结构特点：

全书共分为四个部分。

第一部分为“英语知识运用”，该部分对词汇提出了要求；对语法中的每一个知识点进行了系统分析并附有跟踪训练；对日常交际用语中的交际功能分为考点分析和跟踪训练两个模块进行了系统分析。在编写体例上做到考点明晰，重点突出。

第二部分为“答题策略”，详细讲解了英语知识运用题型、阅读理解题型、短文填空题型、根据情景内容补全对话题型、职场应用题型的答题策略。每一种题型都包括应试技巧、案例分析和专项训练三个模块。其中英语知识运用题型题干设计突出情境化和交际化；阅读理解题型注重选材的趣味性和实用性；短文填空题型加强了对英语基础知识的运用能力的考查；根据情景内容补全对话题型加大了对应用能力提升的考查，内容覆盖面广；职场应用题型设计的题材内容新颖、形式灵活多样并突出职业教育特色。该部分力求技巧实用，分析到位，训练全面。

第三部分为“综合训练”，共设计了四套综合训练题，以不同的难度系数、科学的考点设置让学生考前得到有效的规范训练。

第四部分为“参考答案”，由于部分练习具有开放性特点，答案不唯一，可根据情况灵活处理。

本书编写时力求知识系统、重点突出、目标明确，是参加春季招生考试考生的理想备考用书。

编者
2018年7月

目 录



第一部分 英语知识运用	1
一、词汇	1
二、语法	1
三、日常交际用语	58
第二部分 答题策略	68
一、英语知识运用	68
二、阅读理解	93
三、短文填空	116
四、根据情景内容补全对话	124
五、职场应用	135
第三部分 综合训练	147
综合训练一	147
综合训练二	153
综合训练三	160
综合训练四	167
参考答案	175
第一部分 英语知识运用	175
第二部分 答题策略	178
第三部分 综合训练	186

第一部分
英语知识运用

一、词汇

掌握教育部颁发的《中等职业学校英语教学大纲》（教职成[2009]7号）、山东省中等职业学校英语课程标准及山东省职业教育教材审定委员会审定的中等职业教育《英语》教材中所规定的词汇。

二、语法

历年来山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试英语考试说明中不仅对词汇的掌握提出了要求，同时也要求考生掌握一定的语法项目。因为只有掌握了一定数量的词汇和语法项目并加以灵活运用，考生才能从容面对我省普通高校招生（春季）考试。

1. 名词

名词是用来表示人名、事物名称、时间、地点和抽象概念等的词。

(1) 名词的分类。

普通名词	可数名词	个体名词	表示某类人或物的个体。如：doctor, book
		集体名词	表示若干个体组成的集合体。如：family, police, people
	不可数名词	物质名词	表示不能分为个体的实物，本身不能记数，不能与不定冠词连用。如：air, water
		抽象名词	表示人或者物的状态、品质、感情等抽象概念，本身不能计数，不能与不定冠词连用。如：work, kindness
专有名词	表示特定的或者是独一无二的人、物、人名、地名、组织名称等。如：China, the Great Wall		

(2) 名词的复数形式。

① 大部分可数名词在词尾加“s”变为复数形式。

例如：shop→shops, desk→desks, bag→bags。

② 以“s, x, sh, ch”等结尾的名词后加“es”变为复数形式。

例如：bus→buses, box→boxes, watch→watches, brush→brushes。

- ③ 以“辅音字母+y”结尾的名词，变 y 为 i，然后再加“es”，变为复数形式。

例如：baby→babies, city→cities, story→stories。

※以“元音字母+y”结尾的名词只加“s”，变为复数形式。

例如：boy→boys, key→keys。

- ④ 部分以“o”结尾的名词，加“es”变为复数形式。

例如：hero→heroes, potato→potatoes, tomato→tomatoes, negro→negroes。

※部分以“o”结尾的名词，加“s”变为复数形式。

例如：photo→photos, piano→pianos, radio→radios, zoo→zoos。

- ⑤ 以“f”或“fe”结尾的名词，变“f”或“fe”为“v”再加“es”，变为复数形式。

例如：life→lives, knife→knives, shelf→shelves。

- ⑥ 不规则变化的名词。

有些名词属于不规则变化的名词。

- A. 有些名词变为复数时，改变内部的元音字母。

例如：man→men, woman→women, foot→feet, tooth→teeth, mouse→mice, goose→geese。

- B. 有些名词的单数与复数同形。

例如：fish→fish, sheep→sheep, deer→deer, Chinese→Chinese, Japanese→Japanese。

- C. 有些词变复数时，在词尾加“en”或“ren”。

例如：child→children。

- D. 姓氏是专有名词，姓氏前加定冠词 the，后加“s”表示“某某一家人”。

例如：the Blacks, the Whites, the Wangs。

注意

- (1) 以“s”结尾的名词，未必都是复数。

例如：news (新闻), means (手段、方法), physics (物理), maths (数学), works (工厂), the United States (美国) 等。

(2) 某些名词表示某一种含义时，是不可数名词，无复数形式；而表示另一种含义时，却是可数名词，有复数形式。

例如：paper 当“纸”讲时不可数，当“报纸”或“试卷、论文”讲时可数。fish 当“鱼肉”讲时不可数；当“一条或几条鱼”讲时为可数名词，且单复数同形；当“鱼的种类”讲时也为可数名词，复数形式在词尾加“es”。

(3) 常见的不可数名词：work (工作), help (帮助), money (金钱), food (食物), damage (破坏), meat (肉), advice (劝告), information (信息), progress (进步), luggage (行李), equipment (设备), furniture (家具), knowledge (知识) 等。

- (4) 不可数名词的量的概念常由量词短语来表示。

例如：a piece of news (一则消息), a glass of water (一杯水), two cups of tea (两杯茶) 等。

(3) 名词的所有格。

在句中表示所有关系、所属关系，称为名词的所有格。

① 表示有生命的东⻔的名词，通常在单数名词后加“'s”构成所有格形式。

例如：Tim's desk, my brother's bike.

② 有些表示时间、距离、地点、城市、国家等的名词也有所有格。

例如：today's newspaper, two hours' walk, Shanghai's factories, China's industry.

③ 名词所有格所修饰的词省略情况。

例如：—Whose book is this? —It's John's.

I'm studying at my uncle's.

④ 无生命的名词表示所有关系主要为 of + 名词。

例如：a map of the world.

⑤ 双重所有格

“of + 's 所有格”修饰前面的名词，这种结构叫作名词双重所有格。使用名词双重所有格应该注意的问题：

A. of 前面名词一定要有 a(n), two, any, some, several, few, another 或 this, that, those 之类的修饰语（这个修饰语一般不是 one 和 the）。

例如：Two classmates of my sister's will come to join us.

It's another book of my father's.

B. of 前面的名词不能是专有名词。如不可说：the Tom of his father's.

⑥ 名词所有格的构成：

A. 以“s”结尾的复数名词，只在词尾加“'”构成所有格形式。

例如：the students' books, the boys' toys.

B. 不以“s”结尾的复数名词后依然加“'s”构成所有格形式。

例如：Children's Day, women's club.

C. 以“s”结尾的名词，但不是复数名词，可加“'s”也可只加“'”构成所有格形式。

例如：Charles'(s) mother, my boss'(s) office.

D. 如果一样东西为两人所有，则只在后一个名词后面加“'s”构成所有格形式。如果不是两人共有的东西，则在这两个名词之后都加“'s”构成所有格形式。

例如：Lucy and Lily's room 露西和莉莉合住的房间

Lucy's and Lily's rooms 露西住的房间和莉莉住的房间

(4) 名词在句中的作用。

① 作主语。

例如：All the stories are very interesting.

Our English teacher is from America.

② 作宾语。

例如：She is drawing a picture.

Mary likes music very much.

③ 作表语。

例如: Tom's sister is a doctor.

All of them are my favourite singers.

④ 作宾语补足语。

例如: We call her Xiao Wang.

We elected him monitor.

⑤ 作定语。

例如: I received an invitation letter yesterday.

Do you like wearing cotton shoes?

⑥ 作同位语。

例如: Mr. Black, our English teacher, is very active.

The new desks and chairs are for us, the new students.

⑦ 作状语。

例如: We go to school every day.

Come this way, please.

(5) 名词在句中作主语时要和谓语搭配一致。

① 句子的主语是可数名词的单数形式或不可数名词时, 谓语动词要用第三人称单数形式。

例如: Steak tastes delicious.

A good teacher is someone who not only teaches his students knowledge but also teaches them how to be a real person.

② 句子的主语是复数形式的名词时, 谓语动词要用复数形式。

例如: The students are learning English now.

The boys often play football after school.

③ 用 and, both...and 连接的并列主语, 谓语动词通常用复数形式。

例如: Mary and I are friends.

Both Susan and Tim live in this neighbourhood.

④ 由连词 either...or..., neither...nor..., not only...but also...等连接的并列主语, 谓语的形式与其最近的主语保持一致。在 “There be” 句型中, 如果有两个以上并列主语, 谓语动词常和邻近的, 即第一个主语在单复数上保持一致。

例如: Neither you nor I am a student.

Either Sam or Jack is from England.

⑤ 主语后有 as well as, including, with, together with, like, except, besides 等引导的插入语时, 谓语动词的形式不受其影响。

例如: Tony as well as Mike likes football.

The teacher together with his students is going there on foot.

⑥ 表示时间、价格、数字、度量、国家、单位等名词用作主语时, 通常看成一个整

体, 谓语动词要用单数形式。

例如: Twenty miles is a long distance for a child.

Fifty dollars isn't enough to buy the English dictionary.

The United States is one of the largest countries in the world.

(6) 重难点辨析。

- ① noise 噪声; sound 声音, 声响; voice 人发出的声音。
- ② cloth 布; clothes 衣服(上衣、裤子、内衣等); clothing 服装的总称。
- ③ profession 职业; job 工作(可数名词); work 工作(不可数名词); career 终身职业。
- ④ bill 账单, 支票; charge 要价, 收费; cost 代价, 成本; price 价格; value 价值; discount 折扣; bargain (讨价后成交货、廉价货)。
- ⑤ character 性格, 角色, 特征, 字符; personality 个性; quality 品质, 质量; quantity 数量。
- ⑥ information 信息(不可数名词); message 消息, 信息(可数名词); news 消息, 新闻(不可数名词); notice 注意, 布告, 通知; word 词, 消息, 诺言。
- ⑦ award 奖, 奖品(工作、成就奖); money 钱; prize 奖, 奖品, 奖金(竞赛、抽奖); reward 报酬, 悬赏金(工作、服务等报答)。
- ⑧ condition 条件; position 方位, 位置; situation 形式, 处境。
- ⑨ cause 原因, 起因; excuse 借口, 理由; reason 理由, 原因; explanation 解释, 说明。



跟踪训练

1. _____ are watching TV.
A. The Zhang B. Zhangs C. The Zhangs D. Zhang
2. How many _____ are there in the international school?
A. Russian B. Italian C. Japanese D. American
3. _____ wonderful movie! We like it very much.
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
4. Can you give me some _____ on how to learn English well?
A. suggestions B. messages C. informations D. advices
5. —Are you ready to order?
—Yes. I'd like _____ and _____.
A. hamburger; two cup of green teas
B. a hamburger; two cups of green tea
C. hamburger; two cups of green tea
D. a hamburger; two cups of green teas
6. Of all the vegetables, I like _____ best.

- A. tomatoes B. eggs C. milk D. apples
7. Do you know any friend of my _____?
- A. father B. father's C. fathers' D. fathers
8. Can you imagine what life will be like in _____ time?
- A. 20 years' B. 20 year's C. 20-years' D. 20-years
9. His clothes _____ new, but mine are old.
- A. are B. is C. was D. were
10. Last night there was a food accident. The _____ were ill, but no _____ were lost.
- A. child; lives B. children; life C. children; lives D. child; life
11. September 10th is _____ in China.
- A. Teachers's Day B. Teachers' Day
C. Teacher Day D. Teachers Day
12. Although the town had been attacked by the storm several times, _____ was done.
- A. a few damages B. few damages
C. little damage D. a little damage
13. There are thirty _____ doctors in the hospital.
- A. woman B. women C. women's D. woman's
14. The cat caught two _____ last night.
- A. mouses B. mice C. mouse D. mices
15. My family _____ very pleased about the good news.
- A. be B. is C. am D. are
16. They got much _____ from those newspapers.
- A. ideas B. news C. photos D. stories
17. The teacher with his students _____ going on a trip.
- A. is B. are C. be D. were
18. These _____ are made of _____, not plastics.
- A. glass; glasses B. glass; glass C. glasses; glasses D. glasses; glass
19. — Whose room is this?
— It's _____.
- A. Lucy and Lily B. Lucy and Lily's
C. Lucy's and Lily's D. Lucy's and Lily
20. The _____ are searching for the two _____.
- A. police; thief B. police; thieves
C. polices; thief D. polices; thieves

2. 代词

代词是指代人和事物的词，主要替代名词及起名词作用的短语、不定式、动名词、从句或句子，以避免重复。

(1) 代词的分类。

		单数			复数		
		第一 人称	第二 人称	第三 人称	第一 人称	第二 人称	第三 人称
人称 代词	主格	I	you	he, she, it	we	you	they
	宾格	me	you	him, her, it	us	you	them
物主 代词	形容 词性	my	your	his, her, its	our	your	their
	名词 性	mine	yours	his, hers, its	ours	yours	theirs
反身代词		myself	yourself	himself, herself, itself	ourselves	yourselves	themselves
指示代词		this, that			these, those		
相互 代词	宾格	each other, one another					
	所有格	each other's, one another's					
不定 代词	可数	each, one, many, few, a few, both, another, either, neither					
	不可数	little, a little, much					
	可数或 不可数	all, some, none, such, any, other					
	复合不 定代词	anybody, anyone, anything, somebody, someone, something, nobody, nothing, everyone, everybody, everything					
疑问代词		who, whom, whose, which, what					
连接代词		whoever, whomever, whichever, whatever					
关系代词		who, whom, whose, that, which					

(2) 人称代词的用法。

- ① 人称代词在句中作主语时要用主格，作宾语时用宾格。

例如：We like swimming.

Mr. Smith teaches us English.

I bought a present for her.

- ② 多个人称代词作并列主语时，一般情况下，如果是单数形式，排列如下：

第二人称→第三人称→第一人称；如果是复数形式，其排列通常如下：第一人称→第二人称→第三人称。

例如：You, he and I are good friends.

We, you and they have been invited to the party.

He, some others and I have finished the work together.

(3) 物主代词的用法。

① 形容词性物主代词只能用作定语，使用时要注意与其所指代的词保持“人称和数的一致”。

例如：They have done their best.

Wang Hong lent me her bike.

② 名词性物主代词后面不需要再加名词，在句中可作主语、宾语和表语等。

例如：His shirt is blue. Mine is red.

You may use my dictionary. I will use hers.

③ 名词性物主代词前面通常可与介词连用。

例如：She is a close friend of mine.

This is no fault of yours.

(4) 反身代词的用法。

① 反身代词在句中可作宾语、表语和同位语等。

例如：Please introduce yourself first.

That poor boy was myself.

The thing itself is not important.

② 常见的带有反身代词的词组。

enjoy oneself 玩得高兴 help oneself to 随意吃

by oneself 独自地 for oneself 为自己

teach oneself 自学

(5) 指示代词的用法。

① 指示代词“this, that, these, those”在句中可以作主语、宾语、定语和表语等。

例如：This is a map of China and that is a map of the world.

These are jeeps. Those are trucks.

I will give you the answer this week.

Life was difficult in those days.

② 指示代词“that, those”常用于代替前面提到的事物。

例如：That is exactly what I want to say.

Those are the problems we want to solve.

These machines are better than those we turned out last year.

(6) 相互代词的用法。

① 相互代词“one another 和 each other”表示相互关系，两者用法相似，在句中可作宾语。

例如：We can help each other.

They are pleased with one another.

② 相互代词也有所有格形式，在句中可作定语。

例如：We should point out each other's shortcomings.

They have great concern for one another's studies.

(7) 不定代词的用法。

① every 和 each 的区别：each 指两个或两个以上的人或物中的一个，是“单个”

的意思侧重个体，在句中可作主语、同位语、定语和宾语；every 指三个或三个以上的人或物中的每一个，侧重全体，在句中只能作定语。each 和 every(-body, -thing, -one) 后面动词惯用单数。

例如：Each of them has a dictionary.

They each got a new copy of the book.

Everyone is here.

Every room is clean and tidy.

Each student has a dictionary.

② few, many, a few 修饰可数名词；little, much, a little 修饰不可数名词。few, little (不多，少数) 表达否定的意思；a few, a little (有一些) 表达肯定的意思。

③ nobody, nothing, none 的区别：

nobody 指人，谓语动词用单数形式。nothing 指物，谓语动词用单数形式。有 none of us，而不能用 no one of us。

④ some 和 any 都表示“一些”，都可以代替可数名词或不可数名词，可作主语和宾语。some 多用于肯定句，any 多用于疑问句、否定句。some 有时也可用于希望得到对方肯定回答及表示建议、请求的疑问句中。

包含 some 的复合不定代词，一般用于肯定句；包含 any 的复合不定代词一般用于否定句、疑问句。含有 some 的复合不定代词有时也可用于希望得到对方肯定回答及表示建议、请求的疑问句中。

例如：I have something to say.

Do you have any good ideas?

Would you like something to drink?

⑤ all 可作代词或形容词，作代词时可表示单数或复数。

例如：All are here.

All the money is spent.

⑥ either (两者中的任何一个)，其否定形式为 neither (两者中没有一个)，both (两者都)。当 either, neither 作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式；both 作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

例如：Both of you are right.

Neither of us wants to go.

Either of the books is OK.

⑦ 有关 one, another, other, others 的用法。one 表示一个 (只……)，可替代人或物，其复数形式为 ones。another 表示泛指“另一个”，当表示复数时，用 others。

常用的固定搭配有：

one...the other...

some...others...

some...the others...

例如：She always thinks of others more than herself.

There are two new cars in front of the company. One is mine, and the other is the manager's.

(8) 疑问代词的用法。

常用的疑问代词 “who, whom, whose, what, which” 等，通常用来构成特殊疑问句，在句中作主语、表语、宾语和定语。疑问代词作主语时，句子的谓语动词的单复数要根据疑问代词所指代的人或物是单数还是复数来确定。

例如：Who is knocking at the door?

Which is larger, this or that?

Which are heavier, these or those?

(9) 关系代词的用法。

关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 引导定语从句。

例如：Television benefits very old people who can't often leave the house.

Lucy is the girl whom(who) we met yesterday.

I have got a friend whose sister is a singer.

This is the car which (that) is made in China.

(10) 代词 it 的用法。

① 指代物、人或前面提到的事情或情况。

例如：—Who is it?

—It's me.

It is a nice bag.

If I could repair the bike, I'd do it myself.

② 指代天气、时间、距离等。

例如：It's a fine day.

It's 7 o'clock now.

It is about two kilometers from my home to my school.

③ 常作形式主语或形式宾语，而真正的主语或宾语通常是后面的不定式结构、动名词或 that 从句等。

例如：It's no use sending him over.

It's a pity that you can't come to my birthday party.

I think it easy to answer this question.



跟踪训练

1. —Who is the boy over there?

—_____ is my little brother. He is very naughty but I love _____.

A. He; him

B. His; he

C. He; his

D. His; himself

2. —Who is singing in the classroom?

—_____ must be Susan.

A. She

B. It

C. He

D. This

3. —Do you like the pop star Zhou Jielun or the movie star Liu Dehua?
—_____. I'm not their fan.
A. Both B. Either C. Neither D. All
4. _____ skirt is yours?
A. What B. Whose C. Where D. Which
5. —What a hot day! Have you had a drink?
—Yes. But I'd like to have _____.
A. it B. one C. other D. another
6. I find _____ difficult to lose weight.
A. this B. it C. that D. she
7. —Where do _____ come from?
—_____ come from Australia.
A. your; My B. you; I C. your; I D. you; My
8. —Who is the little girl?
—She is a good friend of _____.
A. my B. mine C. me D. her
9. —I saw Tony at the party. But he didn't speak to me _____ evening.
—Maybe he didn't see you.
A. all B. every C. either D. another
10. Edward is new here, so we know _____ about him.
A. nothing B. something C. anything D. everything
11. I've got many books on English grammar. You can borrow _____ if you like.
A. that B. one C. it D. this
12. —Excuse me, can I park my car here?
—Yes. You can park on _____ side of the street.
A. either B. neither C. both D. all
13. The machines made in this factory are better than _____ made in other factories.
A. this B. these C. that D. those
14. John likes China, he often teaches _____ Chinese.
A. him B. himself C. his D. he
15. China is larger than _____ country in Europe.
A. any B. any other C. all D. others
16. _____ will pay a visit to Mr. White.
A. My classmate and me B. I and my classmate
C. Me and my classmate D. My classmate and I
17. —Tom has a dictionary. You may go and borrow _____.
—No. I'd rather buy _____ in the bookstore.
A. one; it B. one; one C. it; it D. it; one

18. There are 16 students in this team. Ten of them are boys and _____ are girls.

- A. the other B. the others C. others D. other

19. The retired couple have decided to go to college. It's time for _____ to begin a new life.

- A. they B. them C. their D. theirs

20. _____ math teacher is funny and all of _____ love her.

- A. I; we B. You; your C. Your; your D. My; us

3. 形容词

形容词是指修饰名词和部分代词，表示人或事物的性质、状态和特征的词。

(1) 形容词的作用与位置。

① 形容词在句中作定语，一般放在所修饰的名词之前。一个名词有多个形容词修饰时，与名词关系密切的形容词靠近名词。

例如：an interesting English film.

② 形容词修饰不定代词 something, anything, everything, nothing 时，要放在不定代词的后面。

例如：I have something important to do.

③ 形容词作表语与 be, grow, get, become, feel, look, keep, smell 等系动词连用。

例如：The room is clean.

It became dark.

It is getting warmer and warmer.

④ 有些形容词只可以作表语，如以“a”开头的形容词：alone, awake, asleep, alike, afraid, alive 等。

例如：She is alone, but she is not lonely.

The boy is asleep.

表示健康状况的形容词，如 ill, well 等。我们通常说 a sick boy 而不说 an ill boy。

⑤ “the + 形容词”可以表示一类，在句中可作主语、宾语等，表示一类人时，看作复数名词。

例如：The young should care for the old.

The old are taken good care of in our country.

⑥ 形容词作状语可表示伴随状况、原因、结果等。

例如：He went to bed, cold and hungry.

⑦ 几个形容词修饰一个名词，其排列顺序通常是：

限定词+评议性形容词+描述性形容词（大小+长短+高矮+形状+年龄+新旧+颜色+国籍+材料+作用+类别等）。

例如：There is a tall old grey building.

⑧ 形容词短语作定语时放在其所修饰名词的后面。

例如：There are shelves full of books in the library.

(2) 形容词、副词的原级、比较级和最高级。

① 原级，即原形，表示同级比较。结构有 as...as, not so (as)...as。

例如：He is as tall as I.

He doesn't run so fast as Tom.

② 比较级和最高级，通常分别在形容词和副词后加“er”“est”构成，多音节词前分别加 more, most。注意下列不规则变化的形容词：

good/well→better→best, bad/ill→worse→worst, many/much→more→most, little→less→least, far→farther/ further→farthest/furthest, old→elder/older→eldest/oldest。

③ 比较级常用结构：“比较级+than”，表示一方比另一方……，“less+原级+than”表示一方不如另一方……；“The+比较级+主语+谓语，the+比较级+主语+谓语”表示“越……，越……”；“比较级+and+比较级”表示“越来越……”。

例如：Mary is more beautiful than anyone else in her company.

The deeper you dive into the water, the harder you breathe.

With the rapid economic development, China's position on the international stage is getting more and more important.

④ 最高级用于三者或三者以上相比较，通常有表示比较范围的介词短语。

例如：China is one of the largest countries in the world.

He is the tallest of the three.

⑤ no less than /no more than 意思是“不亚于……”“和……一样”“只不过……”。

例如：No less than 1,000 people are here.

She is no less active than she was.

⑥ 最高级前应加定冠词 the。

例如：This is the most interesting story.

Shanghai is one of the biggest cities in the world.

⑦ 原级比较和比较级前可以加上表示倍数、百分数、分数等修饰词，如：twice, three times, 50 percent, one third。

例如：Mary's room is three times as large as mine.

The box is one-third bigger than that one.

Last year the output value of industry was 50 percent higher than that of 1976.



注意

(1) 用于不可数名词的：

much 许多, little 几乎没有, a little 一些, less 较少, a great amount of 大量的, a great (good) deal of 大量的, a small amount of 少量的。

(2) 用于可数名词的：

many 许多, few 几乎没有, a few 一些, several 几个, a great (good) many 大量, a great (good, large) number of 大量的。

(3) 可数和不可数名词都可以的:

a lot of, lots of 许多, more 更多, most 大多数, plenty of 足够的, some 一些, a quantity of 大量的, quantities of 大量的。

(4) 可以修饰比较级的词: much, even, still, a lot, a little, no, rather, any, far 等。



跟踪训练

1. —How old is she?
—She looks _____ than you, in her twenties.
A. old B. older C. oldest D. elder
2. _____ you start, the sooner you will be back.
A. The early B. Earlier C. Early D. The earlier
3. —What bad weather!
—Yes. The radio says it will be even _____ later on.
A. bad B. badly C. worse D. worst
4. There's _____ with my watch. I'll have it repaired.
A. anything wrong B. something wrong
C. wrong anything D. wrong something
5. —How about this new fur coat?
—Oh, the price is _____.
A. too high B. too expensive
C. very expensive D. so dear
6. If you can jump _____ higher, I'll give you a prize.
A. most B. more
C. very D. any
7. —Who is _____ running star in your college?
—I think Philip is.
A. famous B. more famous
C. the most famous D. less famous
8. Tom is taller than _____ in his class.
A. any student B. all the students
C. any other student D. every student
9. My room is _____ yours.
A. three times as large as B. as three times large as
C. as large as three times D. as large three times as
10. —Is Weiqi a popular chess game?
—Yes. It's getting _____ popular. Many people like it.
A. much and more B. more and much
C. more and more D. most and most

11. The reason why so many people sit before the television tonight is that there will be a _____ show.
A. living B. live C. alive D. lived
12. Tom is _____ than Jack.
A. two years older B. two years old
C. older two years D. two-year old
13. _____ should study hard.
A. Young B. Younger C. Youngest D. The young
14. — Do you think time is money?
— Yes, but I think it is _____ money.
A. important than B. as more important as
C. more important than D. so important as
15. English is one of _____ spoken in the world.
A. the important language B. the most important languages
C. most important language D. the most important language
16. — Who will you ask for help with the work, Lucy or Lily?
— Lily. She is much _____.
A. careful B. more careful C. most careful D. more carefully
17. According to the WHO, China already has the _____ lung cancer death rate in the world.
A. highest B. high C. higher D. more high
18. This is _____ movie that I've ever seen till now.
A. most moving B. more moved
C. the most moving D. the most moved
19. The young man is _____ carry the heavy box.
A. strong enough to B. enough strong to
C. not strong enough D. strong enough
20. The Huanghe River is the second _____ river in China.
A. long B. longer C. longest D. the longest

4. 副词

副词是指在句子中表示行为或状态特征的词。

(1) 副词的作用与位置。

① 副词在句中一般用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或用来修饰整个句子。

例如: He runs quickly.

Mary is much cleverer than her younger sister.

② 时间、地点副词一般放在句尾。两者同时出现, 地点副词放在时间副词前面。

例如: We went to the Zhongshan Park yesterday.

或 Yesterday we went to the Zhongshan Park.

表示不确定的时间,例如 always, seldom, often 等常用在行为动词之前,情态动词、助动词、be 动词等之后。

例如: He often comes late.

The apple tree is seldom fruitful.

I will never forget your kindness.

③ 程度副词通常放在被修饰词之前,但 enough 除外。

例如: He is very sorry for it.

You are old enough to do this.

④ 方式副词修饰不及物动词时放在被修饰词后,修饰及物动词时放在宾语后,宾语较长时,也可放在动宾之间。

例如: He works hard.

Mr. Wang wrote some letters carefully to his friends.

(2) 副词的比较级和最高级的变换形式与形容词基本相同。



跟踪训练

- Excuse me, where is Xinhua Bookstore?
—Just 200 meters away. You can find it _____.
A. easy B. hard C. easily D. hardly
- Excuse me, Miss Smith. Could you tell me how to improve my spoken English?
—OK. The best way is to practice _____.
A. as quick as possible B. as quicker as possible
C. as much as possible D. as more as possible
- Tom has been to Japan. I have _____ been there.
A. too B. either C. also D. else
- He arrived in London on Monday, and two days _____ he left for New York.
A. lately B. late C. later D. latter
- We will meet again _____ next time.
A. sometimes B. sometime C. some time D. some times
- Those old men who sent money to children were _____ spoken of at yesterday's meeting.
A. highly B. high C. wide D. widely
- I haven't been to Guilin yet.
—I haven't been there, _____.
A. too B. also C. either D. neither
- I've told him several times but he _____ doesn't understand.
A. yet B. already C. no longer D. still
- It is raining _____ outside. We'd better stay at home.

- A. heavy B. heavily C. hardly D. badly
10. —Ms. Lin is very popular among the students.
—Yes. Her classes are _____ lively and interesting.
A. sometimes B. hardly C. never D. always
11. Cycling is a _____ sport and I believe I will lose my weight _____.
A. relax; quickly B. relaxing; quick
C. relaxing; quickly D. relax; quick
12. Don't worry, sir. I'm sure I can run _____ to catch up with my classmates.
A. slowly enough B. enough slowly
C. fast enough D. enough fast
13. —How do you like your teacher of English?
—Well, no one teaches _____ here.
A. well B. good C. best D. better
14. The old writer lives _____, but he doesn't feel _____.
A. alone; alone B. alone; lonely
C. lonely; lonely D. lonely; alone
15. Of all the students in our class, Mary writes _____.
A. very carefully B. the most carefully
C. more carefully D. the most careful
16. —How are you getting on with your classmates?
—Very _____.
A. good B. better C. best D. well
17. Today we do our homework at home _____.
A. than usual B. often C. usually D. as usual
18. Do you need _____ explanation to the question?
A. more further B. any further C. even farther D. most farther
19. The experiment was _____ easier than we had expected.
A. more B. much more C. more much D. much
20. I think he is one of the best men you've _____ found.
A. never B. already C. ever D. once

5. 数词

数词是指表示数目多少和先后顺序的词。

(1) 数词分为基数词、序数词两大类，前者表示数目，后者表示顺序。

① 大多数序数词由基数词加“th”构成。

例如：fourth, sixth, one hundredth 等。

② 以“y”结尾的基数词变为序数词时，先把“y”变为“i”，再加“eth”。

例如：twenty→twentieth, forty→fortieth 等。

③ 下面几个基数词的序数词形式是不规则形式。

例如: one→first, two→second, three→third, five→fifth, eight→eighth, nine→ninth, twelve→twelfth.

(2) 用基数词表示顺序, 其位置在名词之后。用序数词表示顺序, 其位置在名词之前, 须用定冠词。

例如: Class One, the first class, Bus No. 25, the No. 25 Bus 等。

(3) 表示年代用“in+the+整十的数词复数形式”。另外, 数词前还可用形容词 early, late, middle 等修饰。

例如: in the 1990s, in the early nineteen nineties.

(4) 表示某人大约的年龄, 用整十数的基数词的复数形式。

例如: in one's forties, in one's fifties.

(5) ① 基数词 hundred, thousand, million, billion 表示确切数目, 与具体数词连用时, 用单数形式。

例如: two hundred students.

② 如果加“s”则表示不确切数目, 通常与 of 连用。

例如: hundreds of students, thousands of people 等。

(6) 以基数词合成的定语, 其中名词用单数。

例如: a five-year-old boy, a four-star hotel 等。

(7) 如果没有其他修饰词, 序数词前要加定冠词 the。

(8) 年、月、日的书写方法有 February 12th, 2007; 12 February, 2007 或 12th (of) February, 2007, 读作: February the twelfth, two thousand and seven 或 the twelfth of February, two thousand and seven.

(9) 分数的表示方式: 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词, 分子大于 1 时, 序数词用复数形式。如: $\frac{2}{3}$ —two thirds. 注意二分之一、四分之一、四分之三有特殊表达法, 分别是 one half, one quarter, three quarters.

(10) 百分数的表示方式: 基数词+percent, 其中 percent 没有复数, 以它所修饰的名词来判断谓语的单复数。

例如: Twenty percent of the students agree with you.

Thirty percent of time passes.

(11) 用基数词表示时间。

① 所有的时间都可以用“小时 + 分钟”直接读。

例如: 6:10—six ten.

② 如果所表述的时间在半小时之内, 可以用“分钟 + past + 小时”。

例如: 6:10—ten past six.

③ 如果所表述的时间超过半小时, 可以用“(相差的) 分钟 + to + (下一) 小时”。

例如: 10:35—twenty-five to eleven.

④ 如果所表述的时间恰好为半小时, 可以用“half + past + 小时”。

例如: 11:30—half past eleven.

⑤ 如果所表述的分钟和 15 (15 分钟又叫一刻钟: a quarter) 有关, 还会有另外一种表达法。

例如: 9:15—a quarter past nine, 3:45—a quarter to four。

⑥ 另外英语中的 noon 和 midnight 可分别直接表示白天和夜晚的 12 点。

(12) 倍数的表示方式: “一倍”用 once, “两倍”用 twice, “三倍及以上”用“基数词+times”。



跟踪训练

- The People's Republic of China was founded _____.
A. on October the first, 1949 B. in October the first, 1949
C. on October one, 1949 D. on October first one, 1949
- People trade _____ different things on eBay's website.
A. millions B. million C. millions of D. million of
- We are going to learn _____ next week.
A. Lesson Twelve B. Lesson Twelfth
C. Twelfth Lesson D. The Lesson Twelfth
- He served in the army in _____, when he was in _____.
A. 1980's; twenties B. 1980s; twenties
C. the 1980's; her twenties D. the 1980s; his twenties
- Ask _____ when you want something.
A. 301 Room B. 301 room C. Room 301 D. the 301 room
- What time is it now?
—It's _____.
A. fifty six B. fifty past six
C. ten to six D. six past fifty
- _____ of people choose to stay in hotels when they go abroad.
A. Two third B. Two thirds C. Second three D. Second thirds
- Excuse me. Where is Mr. Green's office?
—It's on _____ floor.
A. seven B. seventh C. the seven D. the seventh
- Over _____ of the surface of the earth _____ covered with water.
A. seventy percents; are B. seventy percent; is
C. seventy percents; is D. seventy percent; are
- What's the date today?
—It's _____.
A. Sunday B. August nine

- ## 6. 介词

(1) about 周围, 大约, 关于。

It's about 6 o'clock.



What are you talking about?

固定词组: how/what about。

(2) across 穿过, 跨过, 在……对面。

例如: Walk across the park.

The post office is just across the street.

(3) after 在……之后, 寻找, 仿照, 追求。

例如: After you, sir.

Read after me, please.

固定词组: look after, year after year。

(4) beside 与 besides。

beside 在……旁边。besides 除……之外, 还……(包括在一定的范围内)。

例如: He sat beside me.

There are five of us besides John.

(5) except 除……之外, 从整体中除去一部分; except for 说明整个情况后, 对细节加以纠正。

例如: We have lessons every day except Sunday.

He is a good man except for his hot temper.

(6) in 与 at 表示地点的区别: in 表示大地方, at 表示小地方。

例如: I live at No. 25 Nanjing road in Qingdao.

(7) in, at, on 表示时间的区别: in 用于世纪、年份、季节、月份等表示时间的名词前; at 用于时刻, 钟点等词前; on 则用于具体某一天、某一日期、星期几等词前面。表示特定某一天的上午、下午、晚上时应用 on 而不用 in 或 at。

例如: on Sunday morning, on a summer night, on a foggy morning 等。

固定词组: at once (立刻, 马上), at home (在家, 在国内), at most /least (至多/少), at first (起初, 开始), at last (最后), at night (晚上), at the end of (在……结束时/末端), be good at (擅长), in a hurry (急忙地), in time (及时), on time (准时), in fact (实际上), in one's opinion (依某人看), in all (总计), in place of (代替), in case (如果, 万一), in the future (在将来)。

(8) for 为, 替代, 对于, 赞成, 往, 向, 代……, 因为……, 就……而言。

例如: Thank you for your help.

What do you have for lunch?

We leave Qingdao for Beijing.

It is important for us to study English well.

固定词组: care for (照顾, 喜欢), look for (寻找), for example (例如), wait for (等候), be for (赞成)。

(9) on 在……上, 有关……。

例如: There is a book on the table.

He went to the US on business.

The teacher gave me some advice on how to study English.

固定词组: on one hand...on the other hand (一方面……另一方面), on the left/right (在左边/右边), live on (以……为生), on duty (值日), call on sb (拜访某人), depend on (依靠), on holiday (度假)。

(10) of 表示所属关系、特征、同位关系等。

例如: He is a friend of mine.

Beijing is the capital of China.

固定词组: of course (当然), be proud of (为……感到自豪), think of (想起), be fond of (喜欢, 爱好), because of (因为), be made of (由……做成)。

(11) along 沿着。

例如: He was walking along the bank of the river the whole afternoon.

(12) before 在……前面, 在……之前。

例如: They arrived in Beijing the day before yesterday.

Before having meals, wash your hands.

(13) by 被, 在……旁, 靠, 用, 按(程度、尺寸、数量), 到……为止, 经过。

例如: The novel was written by Lu Xun.

He sat by the window.

I go to school by bus.

We had learned 1,000 English words by the end of last term.

固定词组: one by one (一个接一个), by the way (顺便问一下), by oneself (独自一人), by air/train/bus/ship (乘飞机、火车、汽车、轮船等)。

(14) from 从, 离, 来自, 由于。

例如: Where are you from?

The school is only five minutes from her home.

固定词组: be different from (不同于), come/be from (来自), from the beginning to the end (从头到尾), from now on (从现在起)。

(15) between 两者之间; among 在……中间, 在……之中(三者或三者以上)。

例如: He will come back between nine and ten o'clock.

The teacher sat among the students in the classroom.

(16) with 和, 同, 与, 对……, 用……, 有……, 由于。

例如: The land is covered with snow.

I agreed with you.

固定词组: go on with (继续), catch up with (赶上), get / keep in touch with (和……取得 / 保持联系)。

(17) over 和 under 表示垂直上下方; above 和 below 表示位置的高低, 也可用于表示温度的高低。

例如: There is a bridge over the river.

The temperature will be above zero.

(18) to 到……时间, 到某地, 对……, 给……

例如: It's ten to four o'clock.

How to get to the station?



跟踪训练

1. Children often grow up to be similar _____ the adults they live with.
A. to B. for C. with D. at
2. —What's the festival about?
—It's a time _____ people to express thanks.
A. for B. of C. to D. with
3. —How are you going to the Summer Palace?
—We are going there _____ bike.
A. for B. at C. of D. by
4. I'm writing to apply _____ the position as a computer programmer that you recently advertised in Qilu Evening News.
A. for B. within C. of D. out
5. —Can you tell me the way _____ the nearest car park?
—Drive to Main Street. It's on the right.
A. to B. on C. at D. for
6. I have learned another two foreign languages _____ English.
A. besides B. on C. except D. except for
7. _____ the end of last term, we had finished the book.
A. At B. On C. In D. By
8. _____ the help of the teacher, I have made much progress _____ my English.
A. Under; in B. Under; with C. In; with D. With; in
9. —It's necessary for us to take one hour's exercise every day.
—I agree _____ you.
A. with B. at C. on D. to
10. —What does she look like?
—She is pretty _____ long blonde hair.
A. from B. with C. for D. of
11. Some people are used to getting up late _____ a cold morning.

- A. on B. in C. at D. of
12. — What shall we buy for Lucy as a present?
— Let's buy a new bike for her. Her bike breaks down from time to time _____.
A. after all B. above all C. at all D. in all
13. Taiwan lies _____ the east of Fujian, _____ the southeast of China.
A. on; in B. to; in C. on; to D. in; to
14. They held a ceremony _____ those killed in the battle.
A. in honor of B. instead of
C. in favor of D. by means of
15. I want to know what happened _____ my friend. I haven't heard _____ her recently.
A. on; of B. to; from C. to; of D. on; from
16. The young singer is quite popular _____ the public. She's made a remarkable achievement _____ a girl of her age.
A. with; at B. to; for C. with; for D. for; at
17. That woman will quarrel _____ everybody _____ anything.
A. about; about B. about; with C. with; about D. with; with
18. We should divide all the potatoes _____ two piles and separated the good ones _____ the bad ones.
A. from; by B. into; from C. into; into D. from; into
19. They said the building would be completed _____ a year.
A. after B. for C. in D. about
20. — These boxes are too heavy for me to carry.
— Here, I'll give you a hand _____ them.
A. for B. to C. with D. by

7. 冠词

英语中常用 a/an/the 来说明名词所表示的人或事物，这三个词常位于名词的前面，故称之为冠词。冠词不能脱离名词而独立存在，不能单独作句子成分。

(1) 不定冠词 a, an 的基本用法。

① a (an) 用来修饰可数名词单数形式。在以辅音音素（不是辅音字母）开头的名词前用 a，以元音音素开头的名词前用 an。

例如：an hour, an apple, a boy, a book 等。

② 不定冠词 a(an)与名词连用，可表示一类人或物。也可用来指量，表达“一个”的含义。

例如：A desk has four legs.

A child needs love.

I'll be back in a day or two.

A boy is waiting for you.

③ a(an)用在一些固定词组中,如: have a good time, have a rest, a few, a little, a lot of, have a cold 等。

(2) 定冠词 the 的基本用法。

① 特指用法,指特定的或上文提到过的人或物。

例如: A girl is talking with Tom. The girl must be Helen.

② 指世界上独一无二的东西。

例如: the sun, the earth, the moon, the world 等。

③ 在由普通名词构成的国家、党派等专有名词前以及江、河、湖、海、山川、群岛、沙漠等名词前用定冠词 the。

例如: the Atlantic, the United States, the Yellow River 等。

④ “the+形容词”可以表示一类人,谓语动词要用复数形式。

例如: the rich (富人), the poor (穷人), the young (年轻人), the old (老年人)。

⑤ 姓氏复数前加 the 表示某一家人,若强调一个整体,谓语动词用单数;强调每一个成员,谓语动词要用复数形式。

例如: the Browns (布朗一家)。

⑥ 用在序数词及形容词或副词的比较级和最高级前。

例如: the first, the tallest, the more...the more 等。

⑦ 常用的词组或习惯说法有: on the left (right), in the east/west, in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, on the other hand, in the end 等。

⑧ 乐器前一般加定冠词。

例如: play the violin, play the piano。

(3) 下列情况一般不加冠词。

① 专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词、人名、地名等名词前一般不加冠词。

例如: China, America。

② 季节、假日、月份、星期、节日、一日三餐名词前一般不加冠词。

例如: May Day, Sunday, winter, breakfast 等。

③ 某些固定词组中不用冠词。

例如: go to school, go to bed, in class, at noon, by bus 等。

④ 学科、球类、棋类、称呼、表示头衔职务的名词前不加冠词。

例如: play basketball, study English 等。



跟踪训练

1. —I've coughed for _____ week and now I have _____ chest pain.

—You'd better take a B-scan.

A. a; a

B. a; the

C. /; /

D. the; a

2. I don't like playing _____ volleyball, I like playing _____ violin.
A. the; the B. a; a C. /; the D. the; /
3. —Can you tell me where _____ Room 202 is, please?
—It is on _____ second floor.
A. /; the B. a; the C. the; the D. a; the
4. There is _____ picture on _____ wall. I like _____ picture.
A. a; the; the B. a; the; a C. the; a; a D. a; an; the
5. We can't live without _____ air.
A. the B. a C. an D. /
6. —What's the matter with you?
—I caught _____ bad cold and had to stay in _____ bed.
A. the; the B. a; the C. a; a D. a; /
7. —Where are _____ students?
—They are in _____ school library.
A. the; the B. /; the C. /; a D. a; /
8. Jane is _____ European and Jack is _____ American.
A. an; an B. a; an C. an; a D. a; a
9. September _____ tenth is _____ Teachers' Day.
A. the; / B. the; the C. the; a D. a; the
10. Thanks for giving me _____ I wanted.
A. the information B. a information
C. an information D. one information
11. If you grow up in _____ large family, you are more likely to develop _____ ability to get on well with others.
A. /; an B. an; the C. the; an D. a; the
12. Mrs. Taylor has _____ 8-year-old daughter who has _____ gift for painting—she has won two national prizes.
A. a; a B. an; the C. an; a D. the; a
13. After _____ dinner he gave Mr. Richardson a ride to _____ Capital Airport.
A. the; a B. a; the C. /; a D. /; the
14. The book tells _____ life story of John Smith, who left _____ school and worked for a newspaper at the age of 16.
A. the; the B. a; the C. the; / D. a; /
15. Tom owns _____ larger collection of _____ books than any other student in our class.
A. the; / B. a; / C. a; the D. /; the
16. For a long time they walked without saying _____ word. Jim was the first to break

_____ silence.

- A. the; a B. a; the C. a; / D. the; /

17. The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have _____ third one because _____ second one is rather too small.

- A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a

18. It's said that _____ apple _____ day keeps the doctor away.

- A. a; an B. an; a C. the; the D. an; the

19. We should offer the seats to _____ old on the bus.

- A. an B. / C. the D. a

20. Chairman Xi Jinping had _____ friendly talk with US President Trump in _____ America in April, 2017.

- A. a; / B. the; / C. /; the D. a; an

8. 动词和动词短语

动词是用来描述主语的动作行为或状态的词，在句中作谓语，用来说明主语是什么、处于什么状态或做什么。

(1) 动词的分类及用法。

动词的分类		用 法	例 句
实义 动词	及物动词	一般情况下，其后要跟宾语意义才完整	<u>Raise</u> your hand if you have questions.
	不及物动词	动词之后不能跟宾语	Don't <u>run</u> . It's dangerous.
系动词 (be, feel, look, get, keep...)		系动词后跟表语	You <u>look</u> young for your age.
助动词 (do, does, did, has, have, had, will...)		用来帮助构成各种时态、语态、语气、句式结构等	I <u>have</u> finished my homework.
情态动词 (can, may, must...)		与动词原形连用，具有词汇意义	He <u>may</u> lose his way.

(2) 动词的基本形式。

英语中动词有五种基本形式：原形，一般现在时的第三人称单数，过去式，过去分词，现在分词。

① 一般现在时的第三人称单数。

规 则	动 词 原 形	单 数 形 式
一般动词加 s	win	wins
以 sh, ch, s, x, o 结尾的动词加 es	finish, catch, do	finishes, catches, does
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，变 y 为 ies	study	studies

② 规则动词的过去式和过去分词。

规 则	动 词 原 形	过 去 式	过 去 分 词
一般情况加 ed	help, look, work	helped, liked, worked	helped, liked, worked
词尾为不发音的字母 e, 加 d	like, live, love	liked, lived, loved	liked, lived, loved
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词, 变 y 为 ied	try, study, cry	tried, studied, cried	tried, studied, cried
重读闭音节结尾的动词, 双写末尾的辅音字母加 ed	plan, stop, nod	planned, stopped, nodded	planned, stopped, nodded

③ 现在分词。

规 则	动 词 原 形	现 在 分 词
一般情况下直接加 ing	study	studying
词尾为不发音的字母 e, 去掉 e 加 ing	like	liking
重读闭音节结尾的动词, 双写末尾的辅音字母加 ing	begin, put, stop	beginning, putting, stopping
少数以 ie 结尾的动词, 先变 ie 为 y, 再加 ing	die, lie, tie	dying, lying, tying

(3) 动词短语。

一些动词常与名词、副词、介词搭配构成固定的动词短语表达固定的词义, 其作用相当于一个动词。

动词短语的主要类型及用法:

① 动词+介词 后面跟宾语时, 只能放在介词之后。

例如: apply for 申请; talk about 谈论; come across 偶然遇见; come to 合计; listen to 听; look at 看; look for 寻找; reply to 回答; deal with 处理; worry about 担心; hear of 听说; look after 照顾; aim at 瞄准; agree with 同意; call on 拜访, 号召; call for 去接, 去取, 要求。

② 动词+副词 后面跟宾语时, 若宾语是名词, 可以放在动词和副词之间, 也可以放在副词的后面; 若宾语是代词, 要放在动词和副词之间。

例如: look up 查阅; give out 放出, 分发; give up 放弃; take off 起飞, 脱下; put down 放下; hand out 分发, 交给; break down 出故障; break out 战争、火灾等发生。

③ 动词+副词+介词 后面跟宾语时, 放在介词后面。

例如: catch up with 赶上; end up with 以……告终; go on with 继续做某事; come

up with 提出, 想出。

④ 动词+名词+介词 后面跟宾语时, 放在介词后面。

例如: catch hold of 抓住, get rid of 摆脱掉, make friends with 交朋友, make fun of 取笑, make use of 利用, pay attention to 注意, take part in 参加, take care of 照看, take the place of 代替。

⑤ be+形容词+介词。

例如: be fond of 喜欢, be familiar with 熟悉, be suitable for 适合于, be used to 习惯于。



跟踪训练

1. —What do you usually do at school?
—I take classes, _____ my classmates and do some sports.
A. talk about B. talk with C. talk on D. talk in
2. —As long as you have dreams, something nice will happen.
—But I don't think I am smart enough to _____ my dreams.
A. realize B. manage C. satisfy D. arrive
3. —Zhang Li is old enough to _____ his own living.
—I think so.
A. win B. gain C. take D. make
4. —Have you _____ to the email?
—No, I haven't. I'll read it.
A. replied B. answered C. sent D. got
5. —What's the departure time of the flight?
—It'll _____ at 14:00 this afternoon.
A. take out B. get on C. take off D. get to
6. There are direct buses from Yantai to Tai'an every day. It _____ about eight hours.
A. spends B. takes C. pays D. costs
7. I'll _____ you some stamps.
A. bring B. take C. have D. make
8. We've decided to _____ the meetings.
A. put on B. put up C. put off D. put away
9. —Mike, are you free? What about playing table tennis together? I have _____ a club.
—It sounds exciting.
A. joined in B. joined C. took part in D. attended
10. —Can I help you?
—I'm _____ a leather jacket.
A. looking up B. looking for C. looking at D. looking out

11. Without proper lessons, you could _____ a lot of bad habits when playing the piano.
A. give up B. catch up C. keep up D. pick up
12. _____ this article and tell me what you think of it.
A. Look up B. Look on C. Look into D. Look through
13. —It's a good idea. But who's going to _____ the plan?
—I think Tom and Mike will.
A. carry out B. get through C. take in D. set aside
14. We _____ the last bus and didn't have any money for taxi, so we had to walk home.
A. reached B. lost C. missed D. caught
15. After discussing, the students _____ some good ideas to work on the project.
A. put up B. set up C. caught up with D. came up with
16. Wearing white can help people _____ when they feel stressed.
A. fall down B. calm down C. look down D. come down
17. I'm not sure whether I can hold a party in the open air, because it _____ the weather.
A. stands for B. depends on C. lives on D. agrees with
18. No one can be right all the time. When people make mistakes, we shouldn't _____ them.
A. wait for B. send for C. knock at D. laugh at
19. —Could you please tell me how to _____ “red envelop(红包)” on WeChat?
—Sure. Let me show you.
A. give away B. give out C. give up D. give back
20. I like it very much and it can _____ me _____ to achieve my dream.
A. cheer; up B. connect; with C. let; down D. take; up

9. 动词的时态

动词主要表示动作，其次表示状态。动作和状态的发生有一定的时间和表现方式，这就是英语中动词的时态。

(1) 一般现在时。

构成：表示动作时，用动词原形或动词的第三人称单数形式，变为疑问句或否定句时要加“do/does”或“don't/doesn't”；表示状态时，用系动词 be (am, is, are)+表语，变为疑问句或否定句时要把系动词提前或在其后加 not。

用法：

① 表示经常发生的动作或存在的状态。

例如：Mary lives in New York.

My father is always busy on weekends.

② 表示客观事实或普遍真理。

例如：The earth moves round the sun.

Two times five is ten.

- ③ 在时间、条件、方式、让步状语从句中，用一般现在时表示将来的动作。

例如：Tell him about it when he comes.

We'll start as soon as you are ready.

If I am free tomorrow, I will go shopping with you.

- (2) 一般过去时。

构成：表示动作时，用动词过去式，变为疑问句或否定句时要加 did/ didn't；表示状态时，用系动词 be (was, were)+表语，变为疑问句时要把系动词提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

- ① 表示过去某一时间内发生的动作或存在的状态。常与表示过去的时间状语连用。

如：yesterday, last week/ year, in 1990, just now, the other day, two years ago, an hour ago, when I was young 等。

例如：He was born in 1998.

We had a class meeting yesterday afternoon.

What did you do just now?

- ② 表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。

例如：When he was in the university, he wrote to his parents once a month.

We got up at five every morning when we were in the countryside.

- (3) 一般将来时。

构成：由助动词 will/ shall+动词原形，变为疑问句时要把助动词 will/shall 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

- ① 表示将要发生的动作或存在的状态。常与表示将来的时间状语连用。如：soon, tomorrow, next week/ month/ year, in a few days, the day after tomorrow 等。

例如：I will go to Shanghai tomorrow.

They will return to their hometown in a few days.

- ② 表示将来经常发生的动作。

例如：We will come to see you every Sunday.

They will go to the cinema twice a month.

一般将来时的其他表示法：

- ① be going to +动词原形，表示打算去做或可能发生的事。

例如：He is not going to do foolish things like that.

We are going to have a meeting to discuss it.

Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.

- ② 有些词，如：come, go, leave, start, arrive 等，可用现在进行时代替将来时。

例如：She is leaving for America tomorrow.

I'm coming.

(4) 现在进行时。

构成：由助动词 be (am, is, are)+动词现在分词，变为疑问句时要把助动词 be(am, is, are)提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

① 表示说话时正在进行的动作。

例如：What are you doing now?

We're cleaning the classroom.

② 表示当前一段时间内的活动或现阶段正在进行的动作。

例如：What are you doing these days?

They are planting trees these days.

(5) 现在完成时。

构成：由助动词 have/ has+动词过去分词构成。变为疑问句时要把助动词 have/ has 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：

① 表示过去发生或已经完成的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果。常与之搭配的时间状语有：already, yet, not...yet, just, never, ever 等。

例如：The concert has already started.

We haven't finished the work yet.

Have you ever been to the Great Wall?

② 表示过去已经开始，持续到现在（也许还会继续进行下去）的动作或状态。常和表示一段时间的时间状语连用，如：since, for, these days, so far, in the past/last ten years 等。

例如：We have studied English for five years.

They have been in this city since 1990.

We have known each other since we were children.

现在完成时与一般过去时的区别：

两种时态都表示过去发生的动作，但现在完成时强调动作与现在的关系、对目前的影响或结果等，不能与表示明确的过去时间连用。

例如：He worked in this company in 2000.

He has worked in this company since 2000.

(6) 过去进行时。

构成：由助动词 was/ were+动词现在分词。变为疑问句时要把助动词 was/ were 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：过去进行时表示过去某段时间或某一时刻正在发生或进行的行为或动作。常与之搭配的时间状语有：at this time yesterday, at that time 或以 when/while/as 引导的谓语动词是一般过去时的时间状语等。

例如：At this moment yesterday, I was packing for camp.

What were you doing at eight last night?

(7) 过去完成时。

构成：由助动词 had + 动词过去分词，变为疑问句时要把助动词 had 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：过去完成时是表示在过去某一时间或某一动作之前已经发生或完成的动作、事情。它表示的是发生在“过去的过去”的动作，只有在和过去某个时间或动作相比较的时候才会使用过去完成时。

① 用在“after / before / when + 过去时态从句”或有“by+过去时间”的句子中，如：by then, by/before nine o'clock yesterday, by the end of last year, by the age of twenty, by the time I arrived 等。

例如：Mother had already cooked supper before I returned home.

By the end of 2016, China had set up 512 Confucius Institutes in 130 countries all over the world.

② 常用在主句为一般过去时的宾语从句中。如 told, said, knew, heard, thought, asked 等动词后的宾语从句。

例如：My father asked me if I had finished reading that book.

She said (that) she had never been to Paris.

现在完成时和过去完成时的区别：

现在完成时强调对现在的影响或结果，过去完成时强调对过去的影响或结果。

(8) 过去将来时态。

构成：由助动词 would + 动词原形，变为疑问句时要把助动词 would 提前，变为否定句时在其后加 not。

用法：过去将来时表示从过去某一时间来看将要发生的某个动作或存在的某种状态。常用于宾语从句中，当主句为过去时，宾语从句表示将要发生的事情时常用过去将来时。

例如：Mary told me that she would go to Shanghai by plane.

He said he would come here the next Friday.

过去将来时的其他表示法：

① was / were going to + 动词原形。

例如：No one knew when he was going to finish his homework.

He told us that he was going to attend the meeting.

② come, go, arrive, leave, die 等瞬时动词，用在过去进行时态中表示过去将来。
was / were + 现在分词。

例如：He was leaving the next day.

We were informed that the leaders were coming to our school soon.



跟踪训练

1. —What are you doing here?
—I _____ for Tom.
A. wait B. am waiting C. will wait D. was waiting
2. —What did you do after school yesterday?
—I _____ basketball with my friends.
A. play B. played C. will play D. am playing
3. —It's raining! When did it start?
—I don't know exactly. In fact, it _____ all this morning.
A. lasts B. has lasted C. lasted D. will last
4. —_____ you mind my opening the window?
—_____. Please open the window.
A. Do; Yes B. Can; No C. Do; No D. Can; Yes
5. —Sam, do you know if Alice _____ to my party next week?
—I think she will come if she _____ free.
A. comes; is B. comes; will be
C. will come; is D. will come; will be
6. It _____ me a long time to do the homework last night.
A. took B. takes C. has taken D. had taken
7. —Shush, be quiet! The baby _____ in the next room.
—OK. Sorry.
A. sleep B. slept C. sleeps D. is sleeping
8. —Can I join your club, Dad?
—You can when you _____ a bit older.
A. get B. will get C. are getting D. will have got
9. —How many times have you been to the Great Wall?
—Only once. I _____ there last year.
A. went B. have gone C. have been D. go
10. —Is this the place that you _____?
—No. I have never been there before.
A. have visited B. will visit C. are visiting D. had visited
11. He isn't here. He _____ to the library.
A. has been B. has gone C. will D. go
12. Henry told the teacher that he _____ his exercise book on time.
A. hand in B. has handed in C. will hand in D. would hand in
13. They _____ a basketball match tomorrow afternoon.

- A. play B. are going to play
C. played D. will be going to play
14. When I got to the station, the bus _____ already _____.
A. was; left B. is; leaving C. has; left D. had; left
15. —How long _____ each other before they got married?
—For about two years.
A. have they known B. had they known
C. did they know D. do they know
16. Long ago, people didn't know the earth _____ around the sun.
A. moves B. move C. moved D. has moved
17. I _____ in the street when someone called me.
A. was walking B. am walking C. walked D. have walked
18. He wanted to know if there _____ an English test tomorrow.
A. is B. was C. will be D. would be
19. —Does Sean _____ English every day?
—Yes, he _____. But sometimes he _____ Chinese with us at school.
A. speak; do; speak B. speaks; does; speaks
C. speaks; does; speak D. speak; does; speaks
20. —What were you doing at eight last night?
—I _____ with my father.
A. am playing chess B. was playing chess
C. am playing the chess D. was playing the chess

10. 动词的被动语态

语态是动词的一种形式，表示主语和谓语之间的具体关系，分为主动语态和被动语态两种。主动语态表示主语是谓语动词所表示的动作用的执行者，被动语态表示主语是谓语动词所表示的动作用的承受者。

(1) 被动语态的构成。

被动语态由助动词 be+动词过去分词构成。助动词 be 有人称和时态的变化。下面以 do 为例介绍考试说明中要求掌握的几种时态的被动语态和含有情态动词的句子的被动语态的构成形式。

一般现在时 am/ is/ are + done

一般过去时 was/ were + done

一般将来时 will / shall be + done

现在进行时 am/is /are +being+ done

现在完成时 have/ has +been + done

含有情态动词的句子的被动语态 can/may/must/need + be + done

(2) 被动语态的用法。

① 英语中，当不知谁是动作用的执行者，或由于某种原因没有必要指出谁是动作用的执

行者时，通常用被动语态。

例如：My bike has been stolen.

Paper was first made in China.

② 强调动作的承受者。

例如：The girl is liked by everybody.

The bridge will be built next year.

The exercises must be done in class.



跟踪训练

1. —Who is the little baby in the photo, Susan?
—It's me. This photo _____ ten years ago.
A. takes B. is taken C. took D. was taken
2. The old version _____ if you don't need it any more.
A. can be removed B. can remove
C. can be removing D. must remove
3. Computer _____ in everyday life in this country.
A. is used B. will use C. will be use D. was used
4. It is reported that the Underground Line No. 3 _____ in our city next year.
A. will build B. has built C. will be built D. has been built
5. When the work _____, you may go home.
A. is done B. done C. is to be done D. will done
6. Kate _____ take part in a party.
A. was invited B. was invited to C. invite to D. invited to
7. These songs _____ often _____ by children.
A. are; singing B. is; singing C. are; sung D. is; sung
8. He was _____ stand up in front of the whole class.
A. made B. made to C. making D. to make
9. The telephone _____ by Bell in 1876.
A. is invented B. was invented C. invented D. invent
10. His new book _____ next month.
A. will be published B. is published
C. has being published D. has been published
11. We can't get through because the road _____ now.
A. is being repaired B. was being repaired
C. is repaired D. was repaired
12. He _____ in the next room.
A. is often heard to sing B. often heard to sing
C. is often heard sing D. often hears to sing

13. English _____ by us for 3 years in the vocational school.
A. have been studied B. has been studied
C. have studied D. has studied
14. The computer should _____. It doesn't work now.
A. repair B. be repaired
C. repaired D. be repairing
15. —Have you moved into the new office?
—Not yet, the office _____.
A. is decorating B. is decorated
C. is being decorating D. is being decorated
16. The sports meeting _____ because of the bad weather.
A. put off B. was put off C. was putted off D. has put off
17. A lot of tall buildings _____ in his hometown in the last three years.
A. have set up B. set up C. have been set up D. were set up
18. I could not get even one ticket since all the seats _____.
A. booked up B. were booked up
C. are booked up D. will be booked up
19. More trees _____ next year to make the city greener.
A. are planted B. will plant
C. will be planted D. would be planted
20. The camera _____ for two weeks.
A. may be kept B. may be borrowed
C. must keep D. should borrow

11. 非谓语动词

非谓语动词指不能单独作谓语，但同时能保留动词某些特征的动词形式，非谓语动词有动词不定式、V-ing 和 V-ed 三种形式。

(1) 动词不定式。

动词不定式的基本形式是“to+动词原形”，但有时可以不带 to，否定形式为“not+不定式”，不定式没有人称和数的变化，在句中不能作谓语，但是可作主语、宾语、宾语补足语、表语、定语、状语等。

① 作主语。

在很多情况下，常可以用代词 it 来代替它作形式主语，而把动词不定式移到句子后部去，以避免头重脚轻；如果需要说明动词不定式表示的动作是谁做的，可以在动词不定式前加一个由 for 引起的短语；在由某些形容词(例如 kind, good, nice, wise, unwise, clever, wrong, right, foolish, stupid, careless, polite, rude 等)作表语时，不定式前常加一个 of 引起的短语，以说明不定式指的是谁的情况。

例如：To become a teacher is his wish.

It's useful to know how to drive.

It's very kind of you to say so.

It's necessary for us to solve this problem.

② 作表语。

例如: His wish is to become a teacher.

Her job is to look after the patients.

③ 作宾语。

动词不定式作宾语很常见,能以动词不定式作宾语的动词很多,常见的有: want, wish, hope, manage, ask, offer, promise, decide, learn, agree, expect, plan 等。

例如: She decided to stay at home last night.

My brother expects to find a job soon.

④ 作宾语补足语。

A. 在动词 tell, ask, want, know, like, hate, allow, permit, force, invite, get, expect, order 等后面可以用动词不定式作宾语补足语。

例如: We invite Sue to have dinner with us.

He asked you not to be late.

B. 在动词 hear, see, notice, feel, watch, listen to, look at, make, let, have 等后作宾语补足语时,动词不定式不带 to。当这些动词在被动句中作谓语时,后面的动词不定式符号“to”就不能省略。

例如: Did you see somebody break the window?

We watched the plane take off.

He was seen to fall.

The students are made to work hard.

C. help 后面的动词不定式可以带 to,也可以不带 to。

例如: He helped his brother to tidy the house.

I will help you finish this task.

⑤ 作定语。

动词不定式作定语时,位置必须放在被它修饰的名词或代词后面。

例如: I have got some letters to write.

He was the first man to leave the building.

⑥ 作状语。

A. 作目的状语,常与 in order to, so as to 连用,否定式为 in order not to, so as not to, so as to 不用于句首。

例如: I'm going out to do some shopping.

I went to America in order to learn English.

B. 作结果状语,常与 too...to..., enough...to...等连用。

例如: It's not dark enough to see the stars clearly.

The teacher was too impatient to listen to anyone.

C. 作原因状语

例如: The girl jumped with joy to hear the news.

I'm very pleased to see you.

⑦ 疑问词+不定式结构。不定式可以和疑问代词 what, which 或疑问副词 when, how, why, where 等连用, 构成不定式短语, 在句中作主语、宾语和表语等成分。

例如: What to do now is still a problem. (作主语)

I really don't know where to go. (作宾语)

The question is which one to choose. (作表语)

(2) V-ing 形式可以在句子中作主语、表语、宾语、定语、宾语补足语、状语。

① V-ing 形式作主语。

A. V-ing 形式作主语放在句首。

例如: Typing is my favorite job.

Reading in bed is bad for your eyes.

B. V-ing 形式作主语时, 通常用 it 作形式主语。

例如: It's no use crying over the spilt milk.

It will be nice seeing you again.

② V-ing 形式作表语。

例如: I think cooking is interesting.

My favorite sport is playing football.

③ V-ing 形式作宾语。

A. V-ing 形式(短语)用作动词的宾语, 例如 practice (动词), suggest, finish, can't help, mind, enjoy, consider, keep, go on 等动词都可以用动名词作宾语(不能用不定式), 在 love, like, need, hate, prefer, begin, start 等动词后, 可以用 V-ing 形式作宾语, 也可以用不定式作宾语。在形容词 worth, busy 等词的后面, 也需要用 V-ing 形式作宾语。

例如: I enjoy getting up early in the morning.

Would you mind passing me the bread?

This book is worth reading.



注意

(1) stop to do something 和 stop doing something 的区别: stop to do something 表示停下来开始做另外的某事, stop doing something 表示停止做某事。

例如: I've stopped smoking.

He stopped to look at the blackboard.

(2) forget/remember/regret 后可以用动词不定式作宾语, 也可以用动名词作宾语, 但意思不同。

例如: I remember taking the medicine at the right time. 我记得已按时服过药了。

I remember to take the medicine at the right time. 我记住要按时服药。

B. V-ing 形式作介词的宾语, 它常在 insist on, think of, hear of, stop...from, look forward

to, depend on, thank...for, devote...to, spend...in, be used to, be fond of, be afraid of, be tired of, be interested in, be proud of 等词组后边作介词宾语, 也可以和 about, against, at, before, after, since, by, for, from, in, on, upon, without 等介词构成短语作状语用。

例如: I am thinking of buying a new car.

Carlos isn't used to eating English food.

Since leaving school he has worked hard.

④ V-ing 形式作定语。

A. V-ing 形式作定语经常放在名词之前; 如果被修饰的词是 something, anything, everything, nothing 等, 则放在这些词之后。

例如: This was a worrying problem.

We are having a relaxing holiday.

Is there anything exciting for tonight?

He is studying in the reading room.

B. V-ing 短语通常放在被修饰的名词之后, 起定语从句的作用。

例如: The man sitting by the window is our English teacher.

He received an envelope containing his credit card.

⑤ V-ing 形式作宾语补语。

在 hear, see, notice, feel, watch, listen to, keep, find, have 等动词后+宾语+现在分词作宾语补语, 表示宾语正在做某事。

例如: He heard someone knocking at the door. (他听到有人在敲门。)

I am sorry to have kept you waiting. (对不起, 让你们等着。)

⑥ V-ing 形式作状语, 表示时间、原因、方式、结果、条件和伴随情况等, V-ing 作状语, 起状语从句的作用, 它的逻辑的主语应与句子的主语一致。

A. 时间状语。

例如: I hurt my leg playing basketball.

I had an accident driving to work.

B. 原因状语。

例如: He was quite disappointed, thinking that he would never have his things back.

Knowing you wanted to go to the concert, I bought a ticket for you.

C. 方式或伴随状语。

例如: I walked out of the room smiling to myself.

D. 结果状语。

例如: The child fell, striking his head against the door and cutting it.

E. 条件状语。

例如: If playing all day, you will waste your valuable time.

(3) 动词的过去分词。

动词的过去分词可以在句中作宾语补足语、状语、表语、定语。

① 动词过去分词作宾语补足语, 宾语与过去分词为被动关系, 表示被动意义或完

成意义。

例如: We found the river polluted.

We wished the problem settled at once.

过去分词在 get, have 等词后面作宾语补足语, 表示请别人做某事。

例如: They are having the room painted now.

Why don't you get your car washed?

② 动词过去分词作状语。

例如: Educated in the United States, she speaks English quite well.

The teacher went to the classroom, followed by some visitors.

③ 动词过去分词作表语。

例如: I was very disappointed to hear that you didn't pass the exam.

Everyone was excited.

④ 动词过去分词作定语。

例如: This is the book written by an American.

The school called "Hope" is the best in the city.



跟踪训练

- We're going out for dinner. Would you like _____ us?
A. to join B. joined C. join D. joining
- I'm really _____ about your health, David.
—Don't worry, Mum. I'll be better soon.
A. worry B. worried C. worries D. worrying
- Bill didn't understand _____ the difficult maths problem.
A. how work out B. how worked out
C. how to work out D. to work out
- The boys of Class Two are going to the seaside this weekend.
—Um, remember _____ them _____ in the sea alone. It's dangerous.
A. to tell; not to swim B. telling; swimming
C. to tell; swimming D. telling; to not swim
- Mary was heard _____ just now. What happened?
—John was telling a joke.
A. cry B. to cry C. laugh D. to laugh
- Jane, I'm very thirsty.
—Let's go to the nearest supermarket _____ some drink, OK?
A. to buy B. buy C. buying D. bought
- Do you want _____ these shoes to see if they're the right size?
A. trying on B. to try on

12. 情态动词

情态动词主要用以说明说话者对某一行为的态度和观点，主要包括能力、判断、需要、可能、各种意愿等。

(1) can, could.

① 表示能力 (could 表示过去的能力)。

例如: I can speak two languages.

He could swim when he was five years old.

② 表示可能性 (could 表示的可能性比较小)。

例如: Anyone can make mistakes.

He could be in the living room.

③ 表示请求、允许 (这时可以与 may 通用，但是 may 较为正式，could 较为婉转)，否定回答用 can't, mustn't.

例如: Can / May I borrow your bike?

Could I use your telephone?

Could you pass me that newspaper, please?

④ 表示推测、怀疑，用于疑问句、否定句和感叹句中。

例如: Can this be true?

He can't be in the reading room.

How can you be so careless!

(2) may, might.

① 表示可能性 (might 的可能性一般比 may 要小些)。

例如: She may be in the classroom.

We might go to the beach.



注意

(1) may 表示可能，不用于疑问句首，此时用 can。

例如: Can the story be true?

(2) 表示可能性时，can't 语气很肯定；may not 语气不肯定。

例如: It can't be him. He has gone abroad. (那不可能是他，他出国了。)

It may not be him, but I'm not quite sure. (那或许不是他，但我不十分肯定。)

② 表示请求、允许 (这时可以和 can, could 通用，但是 may 更为正式)，否定回答用 can't, mustn't.

例如: —May I keep the book for a week?

—No, you can't (mustn't).

He asked me if he might make a suggestion.

③ “May + 主语 + 动词原形”表示祝愿。

例如: May all your dreams come true.

May you be happy!

(3) shall。

- ① shall 用于第一人称, 第三人称疑问句首, 征求对方的意愿。

例如: Shall we sing a song?

Shall I open the door for you?

Shall she go now?

- ② shall 用于第二、三人称陈述句中, 表示说话人给对方的命令、警告、允诺等。

例如: You shall fall if you don't work hard.(警告)

All of you shall arrive before five o'clock.(命令)

- (4) should 表示义务、劝告、推测, 意为“应该”。

例如: We should study hard.

We should not read in the sun.

He should be around sixty years old.

(5) will, would。

- ① 表示请求 (would 比 will 更婉转), 主要用于第二人称疑问句中。

例如: Will you turn on the light, please?

Would you post this letter for me?

- ② 表示意愿。

例如: She said she would take care of the child.

I would like a cup of coffee, please.

- ③ 表示提供帮助或邀请。

例如: What will you have for breakfast?

Would you like me to help you?

(6) must, have to。

- ① must 和 have to 都表示必须、一定的意思, 有时它们可以互换。must 表示主观需要, have to 表示客观上的必要。must 的否定式 mustn't 表示“禁止”, needn't 或 don't have to 表示“不必”。

例如: I must (have to) phone my friend tonight.

You must (have to) have a passport to visit the United States.

You mustn't play my camera.

- ② must 通常表示主观上的必须和说话者的个人意志与权威性。have to 通常表示客观上的必要, 有“不得不”“只得”的意思。

例如: I must lose some weight.

You have to sign the check on the back.

- ③ must 表示肯定的推测, 表示“必定, 一定”。

例如: The light is still on, so he must be at home.

(7) need。

- ① need 作情态动词时, 只用于疑问句和否定句中, need 无人称、时态及语态的变化。

例如: —Need I come?

—Yes, you must. (No, you needn't.)

You needn't put on your sweater.

② need 用于实义动词时，后面常跟动词不定式、V-ing、名词等，有人称、数和时态的变化。

例如：You need to clean your room.

She needs a good rest.

The bicycle needs repairing.



跟踪训练

- Ann, _____ you say this word in English?
—Yes. It's easy.
A. may B. can C. must D. need
- Look! It _____ be the new woman manager.
—It _____ be her. She has just left for Shanghai.
A. can; mustn't B. must; can't C. must; mustn't D. can't; must
- Must I go now?
—No, you _____.
A. must B. mustn't C. needn't D. not have to
- Who's that boy reading in the garden? Is it David?
—It _____ be David. He has gone to Shanghai with his grandparents.
A. can't B. may not C. mustn't D. will not
- Could you tell me more about your problem?
—I _____ talk about it any more.
A. mustn't B. had better C. would rather not D. would rather
- Could I borrow your dictionary?
— Yes, of course you _____.
A. might B. will C. can D. could
- Excuse me. How can I get to the railway station?
—Turn left and then follow your nose. You _____ miss it.
A. haven't B. can't C. mustn't D. needn't
- _____ we go out for a walk?
—Good idea. What time shall we meet?
A. Shall B. Can C. Would D. Will
- I missed the last bus, so I _____ go home on foot.
A. must B. have to C. may D. had to
- Would you like to join us for lunch?

—Sorry, _____. My brother is coming to see me.

- A. I mustn't B. I can't C. I needn't D. I will

11. We _____ be careful when we are walking across the road. There are too many vehicles.

- A. must B. may C. can D. could

12. — _____ I smoke here?

—No, you _____. This is no-smoking area.

- A. May; needn't B. May; mustn't C. Must; couldn't D. Could; wouldn't

13. You _____ to the meeting this afternoon if you have something important to do.

- A. needn't to come B. don't need come
C. don't need coming D. needn't come

14. When I was a child, I _____ watch TV whenever I wanted to.

- A. may B. could C. can D. might

15. — _____ you do me a favor?

—Sure. With pleasure.

- A. Must B. Need C. Should D. Could

16. —What's wrong with your bike?

—My bike doesn't work and _____ repairing.

- A. need B. needs C. must D. may

17. —Need we clean the dance room every day?

—Yes, you _____.

- A. may B. can C. must D. should

18. Let us help you finish the task, _____?

- A. do you B. shall we C. will you D. won't you

19. —What should we do to protect the fish in the river?

—We _____ throw rubbish into the river.

- A. mustn't B. need C. must D. needn't

20. Excuse me. _____ you please pass me the book?

- A. Must B. Might C. Would D. Should

13. 简单句和并列句

构成篇章的基本单位是句子，每个句子是由词或短语构成，这些词或短语就是句子成分。不同的内容需要不同的句式结构，这些句式结构又构成英语中不同的句子类型。

(1) 简单句的六种基本句型。

简单句的基本句型主要包括：主—系—表、主—谓—（状）、主—谓—宾、主—谓—间宾—直宾、主—谓—宾—宾补、There be 结构的基本句子结构。

例如：He is a teacher.

We study hard.

He thought over the plan all the night.

I gave him some money.

We think the job easy.

There is going to be a party in the meeting room tonight.

(2) 简单句的种类。

① 陈述句。

陈述句说明一个事实或者陈述说话人的看法。

例如: She arrived late.

He is not fat.

② 疑问句。

疑问句提出问题, 句末用问号。疑问句通常分为: 一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反义疑问句。

例如: Can you speak English?

Who is the tallest in your class?

Are you a teacher or a student?

Beijing is a beautiful city, isn't it?

③ 祈使句。

祈使句表示请求、命令、叮嘱、号召等, 谓语动词用原形, 其否定式在动词前加上 Don't。

例如: Come in, everybody!

Don't let them make any noise.

Let's not waste time.

Please read the text.

④ 感叹句。

感叹句表示喜怒哀乐等情绪, 多用 what 和 how 引起: what 用来修饰名词, how 用来修饰形容词、副词或动词。

例如: What good news it is!

What a beautiful park it is!

How beautiful the park is!

How well she dances!

(3) 并列句。

如果句子包含有两个或更多互不依从的主谓结构, 就是并列句, 并列句中的分句通常是用一个并列连词来连接。常用的并列连词有: and, but, or, so, for, while, however, not only...but also, either...or, neither...nor 等。

例如: He made a promise, but he didn't keep it.

He's tall while she is short.

Either come in or go out.



跟踪训练

1. —Mr. Johnson isn't a teacher, is he?
—_____. He's taught in our school for 5 years.
A. No, he is B. No, he isn't C. Yes, he is D. Yes, he isn't
2. Harry comes late sometimes, _____?
A. is he B. isn't he C. does he D. doesn't he
3. _____ a lovely day it is!
A. How B. What C. How it is D. What it is
4. Let's meet at the station, _____?
A. will you B. won't you C. shall we D. shall not we
5. _____ (✓) the words you hear, please.
A. Checking B. Check C. To check D. Checks
6. _____ is the price of the pair of the shoes?
A. How much B. How many C. What D. How
7. _____ do you like better, this one or that one?
A. What B. Which C. How D. Where
8. —Would you like to come to dinner tonight?
—I'd like to, _____ I'm too busy.
A. and B. so C. as D. but
9. —_____ is your favorite football star?
—Ronaldo.
A. Who B. How C. When D. What
10. —_____ is he?
—He is well.
A. How B. What C. What an D. How an
11. There _____ a class meeting tomorrow morning.
A. will have B. is going to have C. have D. will be
12. —_____ late again, Li Ming.
—Sorry, sir. I won't.
A. Not be B. Don't be C. Not to be D. Don't to be
13. Albert! It's time for you to go to bed, _____ you will feel tired tomorrow.
A. but B. and C. or D. so
14. Smile to the world, _____ the world will smile back to you.
A. nor B. but C. or D. and
15. If you have a job, _____ yourself to it and finally you'll succeed.
A. do devote B. don't devote C. devoting D. not devoting

16. — _____ interesting the film is!
—Yeah. We are all interested in it.
A. How B. What C. What a D. What an
17. —You can't imagine _____ great fun chatting online is!
—Really? But it may cause you a lot of trouble.
A. How a B. What a C. What D. How
18. Not only my mother but also I _____ fond of collecting stamps.
A. is B. am C. are D. were
19. Li Hong _____ English.
A. does like B. do likes C. does likes D. do like
20. We are thirsty. I would like a bottle of orange, _____ my brother would like some cool water.
A. when B. until C. since D. while

14. 主从复合句

主从复合句是指由两个或两个以上的分句构成，而且其他分句从属于一个主要分句的句子。

(1) 状语从句。

① 时间状语从句。

由 when, while, as soon as, once, until, till, as, before, after, since 等引导。

when “当……的时候”指某个具体的时间，表示一件事紧跟另一件事发生；

while “当……的时候”强调主句中的动作与从句中的动作在某一段时间内同时发生，while 从句必须用延续性动词；

as soon as 表示 “一……就” 的意思；once 表示 “一旦……就” 的意思；

until 和 till 意为 “直到……为止”，until 多用于句首，till 主要用于口语中。

在时间状语从句中，如果主句表达的意思是将来时态，从句需要用一般现在时态表达将来时态。

例如：When he returned, his wife was cooking.

While you are listening to the teacher, try to answer his questions.

The boy didn't see the car until it was very late.

Tom waited till his mother finished her work.

He will phone you as soon as he has a good idea.

Once my daughter reaches the age of sixteen, she will be able to drive.

② 条件状语从句。

由 if, unless, as long as 引导。

if 表示 “如果”，unless 表示 “除非”，as long as 表示 “只要”，在条件状语从句中，如果主句表达的意思是将来时态，从句需要用一般现在时态表达将来时态。

例如：If you are not a romantic, you won't want to see a love story.

You will fail in the exam unless you study hard.

As long as I am here, I will help you.

③ 原因状语从句。

由 because 引导，表示主句动作的原因。

例如：I like my work very much because my job is very interesting.

④ 方式状语从句。

由 as 引导，表示主句动作的方式。

例如：I did as my parents asked.

⑤ 目的状语从句。

由 so that, in order that 引导。so that, in order that 表示“为了……”，“以便”的意思，通常与 can, can't, will, won't 等连用。

例如：He often does morning exercises so that(in order that) he can keep clear in his mind.

I lent him \$ 30 in order that (so that) he might go for a holiday.

⑥ 结果状语从句。

由 so...that, such...that 引导，so 后主要跟形容词或副词，so...that 表示“如此……以至/以致”；such 后跟名词，such...that 表示“这样的(一个)……以至/以致”。

例如：I was so tired that I couldn't finish the work.

It was such lovely weather that we spent the whole day in the park.

⑦ 比较状语从句。

由 as...as, not so(as)...as, than 等引导。

as...as 表示“像……一样”，not so(as)...as 表示“不像……一样”，than 表示比较。

例如：This work is not so easy as you think.

He is three years older than I (am).

Mary doesn't work as hard as I do.

⑧ 地点状语从句。

例如：Where there is a will, there is a way.

You have the right to live where you want.

⑨ 让步状语从句。

由 though, although, even though, even if 等引导。though 和 although 都表示“虽然”，although 比 though 更为正式，二者都可与 yet, still 连用，但不能和 but 连用。even though 和 even if 表示“即使”。

例如：Although he worked hard, yet he failed.

Air has weight, though it is light.

I couldn't sleep even though I was tired.



跟踪训练

1. —_____ you have a long holiday, where do you want to go?
—I'll climb Mount Tai alone _____ my parents stop me.
A. Unless; if B. If; unless C. As long as; if D. When; If
2. —There will be a baseball match this Sunday. Would you like to go with me?
—_____ I have time, I will go with you.
A. Before B. If C. After D. Because
3. She doesn't work _____ I do.
A. so hard as B. as harder as
C. so harder as D. as the hardest as
4. —Hurry up. The bus is coming.
—Wait a minute. Don't cross the street _____ the traffic lights are green.
A. after B. unless C. while D. since
5. _____ he finished his homework, he went out to play.
A. As well as B. As long as C. As far as D. As soon as
6. —Where is the comic book?
—I brought it to you _____ you were in the reading room yesterday.
A. when B. if C. because D. before
7. —Mary, turn off the water _____ you are brushing your teeth.
—Sorry, I'll do it at once.
A. until B. while C. during D. unless
8. We have been good friends _____ we joined the same ping-pong team.
A. after B. before C. since D. until
9. —How is the weather tomorrow?
—I don't know if it _____ tomorrow.
—Well, if it _____, I won't go with you.
A. will rain, will rain B. rains, rains
C. rains, will rain D. will rain, rains
10. When your favorite player kicks the football into the goal, you feel _____ you were on top of the world.
A. as soon as B. as if C. so that D. if
11. —Is Johnson at school today?
—No. He is at home _____ he has a bad cold.
A. if B. because C. until D. before
12. _____ you have dreams, something nice will happen.
A. Even though B. As soon as C. As long as D. As though

13. He ran very fast _____ he could catch up with others.
A. in order to B. such that C. so as to D. in order that
14. Director Zhang had _____ many children that they formed their own basketball team.
A. so B. such C. such a D. so a
15. — It's time to go to bed, Li Ming.
— Mum, I have a lot of homework to do, I won't go to bed _____ I finish it.
A. as soon as B. since C. until D. after
16. I always did _____ my teacher asked.
A. as if B. as C. like D. so
17. — The job seems very difficult.
— _____ it will take me a long time, I decide to finish it.
A. As if B. If C. Unless D. Even though
18. You should put the dictionary _____ you can find it easily.
A. where B. the place C. on which D. what
19. _____ you have made decisions, you should stick to it.
A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once
20. _____ the girl is only ten, she takes care of her brother and cooks meals every day.
A. If B. As C. Because D. Although

(2) 定语从句。

① 关系代词 who, whom, whose。

A. who, whom 用于人, who 在定语从句中作主语或宾语, whom 在定语从句中作宾语, 作宾语时 who 或 whom 可以省略。

例如: This is the doctor who saved the boy's life.

The man (who/whom) Wang Tao wrote to on the internet is the personnel manager.

B. whose 主要用于人或物, 在定语从句中作定语。

例如: I know a girl whose father is a doctor.

This is a house whose windows face the sea.

② 关系代词 that, which。

A. 关系代词 that 可以代替 who 指人, 可以代替 which 指事物或物, 在定语从句中一般可作主语或宾语, 作宾语时可以省略。

例如: He is the man that telephoned me last night.

This is the place (that) we visited.

B. 关系代词 which 用于指事或物, 可以在定语从句中作主语或宾语, 作宾语时可以省略。

例如: This is an old computer which/that works much slower.

This is the building (which/that) we built.



注意

下列情况只能用 that 不能用 which:

① 如果先行词是 all, little, everything, something, anything, nothing, much, few, none 等不定代词, 只能用 that。

② 当先行词被形容词最高级、序数词或 only, any, few, little, no, all, one of 等词修饰时, 关系代词只能用 that。

③ 先行词中既有人又有物时, 关系代词只能用 that。

例如: This is the most interesting book that we can buy.

We have done all that should be done.

There is nothing that we can do now.

They are the writer and the book that I like.

④ 当主句是以 who, which 开头的疑问句时, 关系代词只能用 that。

例如: Which is the book that he bought from the bookstore yesterday?

Who is the girl that you met yesterday?

③ 关系副词 when, where, why。

A. 关系副词 when 在定语从句中作时间状语, 主要修饰表示时间的名词。

例如: Is there a time when we can meet?

I will never forget the day when we met together.

B. 关系副词 where 在定语从句中作地点状语, 主要修饰表示地点的名词。

例如: The factory where I work is near my house.

This is the study where Lu Xun used to live.

C. 关系副词 why 在定语从句中作原因状语, 主要修饰名词 reason。

例如: I want to know the reason why he was late for class yesterday.

Is there a reason why you want to leave now?

This is the reason why he was late.

D. 介词+which 可以代替 where, when。

例如: That's the city in which (where) he was born.

The hotel at which (where) we stayed was very small.

That day on which (when) I met Deng Xiaoping was the greatest day of my life.



跟踪训练

1. —Barbara, where do you work?

—I work for a company _____ sells cars.

A. which

B. what

C. where

D. who

2. She is the student _____ English is the best in my class.

A. who

B. whom

C. whose

D. which

3. The reason _____ he got a bad cold is that he was caught in a heavy rain.
A. when B. why C. which D. where
4. —What skills does a mechanic have?
—A mechanic is a person _____ fixes buses and trucks.
A. when B. who C. which D. why
5. Have you met the girl about _____ he was speaking?
A. / B. whom C. that D. who
6. About 97% of the water on the earth is sea water _____ we can't drink or use to water plants directly.
A. that B. where C. in which D. the one
7. The train _____ she was traveling was late.
A. which B. when C. on which D. in that
8. October 1, 1949 is the day _____ the People's Republic of China was founded.
A. which B. when C. in which D. on that
9. —Do you know the place Wolong _____ the pandas Tuantuan and Yuanyuan was born?
—Yes, I know.
A. which B. that C. whose D. where
10. Do you know the street _____ Mr. Smith once lived?
A. which B. that C. in that D. in which
11. We live in a building _____ windows are brown.
A. that B. whose C. which D. who
12. Do you know the man _____?
A. whom I spoke B. to who spoke C. I spoke to D. that I spoke
13. Tony will never forget these days _____ she lived in China with her mother, which has a great effect on her life.
A. that B. when C. which D. where
14. Pass me the book _____ cover is red.
A. which B. whose C. what D. that
15. —Do you have anything _____ you want to say for yourself?
—No, that's all.
A. that B. who C. which D. what
16. — Why do you like the story so much?
—Because it is the best film _____ I have ever seen.
A. that B. which C. whose D. whom
17. The place _____ interested me most was workshop in my school.
A. where B. in which C. what D. which
18. They talked for about an hour of things and persons _____ they remembered in the school.
A. which B. that C. who D. whom

19. —What do you think of the hotel _____?

—It's comfortable.

A. where you stayed

B. which you stayed

C. at that you stayed

D. where you stayed at

20. — Can I have a look at the book _____ you bought yesterday?

— Of course you can. Here you are.

A. what

B. who

C. /

D. where

(3) 名词性从句。

① 由 that 引导的名词性从句。

A. that 引导的主语从句(that 从句位于句首时, that 不可以省略)。

例如: That you are coming to China is good news to us.

It is natural (that) they should have different ways to settle the problem.

B. that 引导表语从句。

例如: The fact is (that) he doesn't try hard.

My idea is (that) we should work hard.

C. that 引导宾语从句。

例如: We all know (that) the earth moves around the sun.

Many people say (that) they have seen the old man.

② 由 if, whether 引导的名词性从句。

A. whether 可以引导主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句(介词的宾语从句)。

例如: Whether he comes to Beijing is not clear to me. (主语从句)

I asked my parents whether I could go swimming. (宾语从句)

The question is whether we can go there on time. (表语从句)

It all depends on whether they will support us. (介词的宾语从句)

B. if 可以引导宾语从句, 也可以引导主语从句, 但只能后置, 不能居于句首。

例如: It is not clear to me if we would have a meeting.

He asked if the train stopped at New York.



注意

whether 后面可以跟 or not, 而 if 则不可以。

③ 由连接代词和连接副词引导的名词性从句。

由连接代词和连接副词引导的名词性从句, 连接词主要有 who, whom, whose, which, what, where, when, how, why 等, 连接词在从句中充当一个成分。

A. 主语从句。

例如: Who did the work is unknown.

Who will go to countryside has not been discussed.

B. 宾语从句。

例如: I know what you are thinking.

You must tell me which I should choose.

They are talking about what they should do next.

C. 表语从句。

例如: That was why he was late yesterday.

The problem is where they can live.



注意

(1) whether 能引导所有名词性从句, whether 能与 or(not) 连用; if 只能引导主语和宾语从句, 但不能作介词的宾语, 不能与 or(not) 连用, 引导主语从句时不能放在句首。

例如: I don't know whether I should take his advice or not.(不能用 if)

The question is whether I can learn Chinese well.(不能用 if)

(2) What 引导名词性从句时, 可有两种意义:

① 保持原有的疑问意义:

例如: I don't know what he wants.

② 表示“……东西”“……事情”:

例如: That's what he wants.

(3) what 和 that 不可混用, what 相当于 all that。

例如: I don't know what I should do.

I know all that I should do.



跟踪训练

1. Do you remember where _____ my watch?

A. did I put

B. had put I

C. I put

D. have I put

2. —Do you remember _____ he came?

—Yes, I do. He came by car.

A. how

B. when

C. that

D. where

3. This is _____ looking for.

A. what were you

B. you were

C. what you were

D. that you were

4. Could you tell me _____?

A. where are you from

B. where do you come from

C. where you are from

D. where you to be from

5. Have you decided _____?

A. which one will you choose

B. which one you will choose

C. which one you to choose

D. to choose which one

6. —What did you say to your mother just now?
—I asked her _____ she cooked for dinner.
A. that B. if C. how D. what
7. —Did Mr. White tell you _____?
—Yes. He said he went there in 2003.
A. when he traveled to Wuhan B. when he goes to Wuhan
C. where he spent his holidays D. why did he visit Kunming
8. It is reported _____ some sea animals are no bigger than your smallest fingernail.
A. what B. like C. as D. that
9. The question is _____.
A. what should we do first B. that should we do first
C. what we should do first D. why should we do first
10. —Alice, Rita called you just now when you were out.
—Did she say when _____ me again, Dad?
A. she will call B. would she call
C. she would call D. will she call
11. He didn't tell us _____.
A. if he will give us a lecture B. whether he would go with you
C. when he has studied D. when he will arrive
12. I don't know _____ he'll come or not.
A. whether B. if C. that D. what
13. Could you tell me _____ the post office?
A. how can I get to B. how I can get to C. where can I get to D. where I get to
14. —Excuse me, could you tell me _____?
—There's an e-shop on the third floor. You can make it there.
A. where can I have my MP4 repaired B. where I can have my MP4 repaired
C. how can I go to the e-shop D. if there was an e-shop nearby
15. —Do you know _____ he didn't come?
—He hurt his leg.
A. when B. what C. why D. where
16. —Someone is knocking at the door, Dad?
—Go and see _____.
A. who is it B. who it is C. who is he D. who he is
17. Could you tell me _____ she is looking for?
A. that B. whose C. whom D. where
18. _____ you like him is none of my business.
A. What B. Who C. That D. Whether
19. My idea is _____ we should work hard.
A. that B. what C. when D. why

20. We don't know when he _____. He will call us when he _____.
 A. will come; will come
 B. comes; comes
 C. will come; comes
 D. comes; will come

三、日常交际用语

要求掌握日常生活、学习、工作、休闲娱乐等交际场合的简单对话用语。

1. 问候与应答 (Greeting and responding)

First speaker	Second speaker
Good morning./Good afternoon./Good evening.	Good morning./Good afternoon./Good evening.
Hello./Hi.	Hello. /Hi.
Glad/Nice/Pleased to meet/see you.	Glad/Nice/Pleased to meet/see you.
How do you do?	How do you do?
How are you? /How are you doing?	I'm fine. /Fine. / I'm very good. Thank you.
How is everything? /How are things?/How is it going?	So-so. /Very well./Pretty good./Not bad. Thank you.
What's up? /What's good news?	Nothing much./Nothing special.

2. 引荐与介绍 (Introducing oneself and others)

Let me introduce myself./ May I introduce myself? My name is Zhao Gang. I'm from Shandong.
Let me introduce Mr. Black. /May I introduce Mr. Black? He is our new English teacher.
Let me introduce you. This is Zhang Li. She is my friend. And this is Miss Huang, my math teacher.

3. 告别 (Saying goodbye)

I'm afraid I must be leaving/must be off/have to go now. I think it's time for us to leave now.
Goodbye! /Bye-bye! See you later /tomorrow. See you. Good night.

4. 问时间、日期与应答 (Asking the time, dates and responding)

Asking the time, dates	Responses
Excuse me. What's the time, please? Excuse me. What time is it? What time do you have? What time is it by your watch? Could you give me the time? When does the bookstore open?	It's half past seven/twenty to eight. It's seven o'clock by my watch. It opens at 7:40 am.
What's the date today? When is your birthday?	Today/It is April 4. It's May 8th.
What day is (it) today?	Today is Friday./It's Monday.

5. 谈论天气 (Talking about the weather)

Asking for the weather	Responses
What's the weather like today?	It's fine/cloudy/windy.
How is the weather today?	It's getting cold/warm.
What's the weather like in Beijing?	It's a beautiful day today.
What's the temperature today?	It's 1~9 °C.

6. 劝告与建议 (Giving advice and making suggestions)

Giving advice and making suggestions	Responses
<p>You'd better hurry up.</p> <p>Why don't you go for a walk? / Why not go for a walk?</p> <p>How about / What about seeing a film?</p> <p>Shall we go for a picnic?</p> <p>I advise you not to swim in the river.</p> <p>What do you think of having a walk?</p> <p>Maybe you ought to tell him.</p>	<p>That's a good idea.</p> <p>That sounds good.</p>

7. 问路与应答 (Asking the way and responding)

Asking the way	Responses
<p>Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me how to (how I can) get to the bus station?</p> <p>Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me where the Carrefour Supermarket is?</p> <p>Excuse me. I'm looking for a bank.</p> <p>Excuse me. Is there a bookstore near here?</p> <p>Excuse me. How can I get to the airport?</p> <p>Excuse me. Can/Could you tell me the way to the People's Hospital?</p>	<p>Drive to Main Street. It's on the right, across from the Carrefour Supermarket.</p> <p>Go/ Walk straight ahead and make a right turn at the first crossing.</p> <p>Turn left at the second crossing.</p> <p>Take the first turn on the right.</p> <p>It's next to the Agricultural Bank of China.</p> <p>Walk one block east and the theatre is at the crossroads.</p> <p>Sorry, I'm new here.</p>

8. 就餐 (Taking meals)

Waiter/waitress	Customer
Would you like something to drink/eat/have?	Yes, I'd like /I'll have two coffees with cream.
Will you have something to drink/eat/have?	
What would you like to drink/eat/have?	I'd like a cup of tea.
Anything else?/ Would you like anything else?	No. Thank you.
Are you ready to order?	Yes, a sandwich and a beef.
May I take your order, please?	Yes, I'd like a beef. I'd like it well-done.
What's the specialty here?	Dumplings with seafood.

9. 就医 (Seeing the doctor)

Doctor	Patient
How are you feeling? How do you feel? What's wrong? What's the matter with you? What's the trouble with you? What seems to be the problem?	I'm feeling tired/ terrible. I ache all over. I have got / I have a headache/cold/fever. I am not quite well. I'm not quite myself. I have a stuffy nose./I've got a sore throat. My arms and legs feel weak.
Have a good rest./ Drink plenty of water. Take the medicine on time as you are told. Take one pill four times a day for three days. Be careful to keep warm. Don't do much exercise.	

10. 邀请、约会与应答 (Making invitations, making appointments and responding)

Invitations	Responses
Would you like/love to join me for lunch? I wonder if you'd like to come to my birthday party. Shall we go and see it? Why not play football? How about going to the movies tonight? Now come with me to have dinner.	Accept the invitation Yes, I'd love/like to. That sounds great./That's a good idea. All right then! I'd like it very much. Refuse the invitation I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't. Sorry, I can't. But thanks anyway. What a pity! Some other time then.
Making appointments	Responses
Will you be free tomorrow? /Are you free tomorrow?	OK. I'll see you then. /I'll be free. I'm afraid I won't be free tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't meet you then.
What time would you like me to come? /When shall we meet? /When can I see you?	Any time will suit me. / Any time will be OK. Any time is all right.
Can you make it tomorrow? /Will tomorrow be all right? /How about tomorrow? /Is tomorrow OK?/ Can we make it a little later? /Shall we make it some other time?	All right. See you then. Sorry, I couldn't make it tomorrow. I'm afraid I can't make it tomorrow.

11. 道歉与应答 (Making apologies and responding)

Apologies	Responses
I have an apology to make. /I'd like to make an apology. /I apologize to you for being late./I hope you will forgive me.	Not at all./It's nothing./That's OK./That's all right./It doesn't matter./Never matter./ Never mind./Please don't worry about it.
I'm sorry./ I'm really sorry./ I'm sorry for being late.	

12. 祝愿、祝贺与应答 (Good wishes, congratulations and responses)

Good wishes, congratulations	Responses
Good luck!/I wish you good luck/success! Good Journey to you!/ Have a good trip. Have a nice/good time./Happy birthday to you. Congratulations! I'd like to congratulate on your success.	Thank you.
Happy New Year!/ Wish you a very happy new year.	Happy New Year!/The same to you.
Merry Christmas!/May you have the best Christmas.	Merry Christmas!/ The same to you.

13. 感谢与应答 (Expressing thanks and responding)

Thanks	Responses
Thank you./Thanks./Many thanks./Thanks a lot./ Thank you very much.	You are welcome. Please don't mention it. It's my/a pleasure. That's OK./That's all right. My pleasure. Not at all.
Thank you all/just the same./Thanks anyway/again.	
You're very kind./It's very kind of you.	

14. 赞同与反对 (Expressing agreement and disagreement)

Agreement	Disagreement
I agree with you. Certainly. / Sure. / Of course. No problem. Yes, I think so. OK. / All right. / That's right.	I disagree. / I couldn't agree with you. I don't think so. I'm afraid I disagree with you. Never! No way.

15. 情感表达 (Expressing feelings and emotions)

Feelings and emotions
<p>I'm glad / pleased / happy to hear that.</p> <p>That's nice / wonderful / great.</p> <p>We had a good / wonderful time.</p> <p>Good!</p> <p>Well done!</p> <p>It's a great pity.</p> <p>I'm so sorry to hear you are going away.</p> <p>I'm stressed.</p> <p>She feels nervous.</p> <p>You look worried.</p>

16. 打电话 (Making phone calls)

The first speaker	The second speaker
<p>Could/May I speak to Mary, please?</p> <p>Is that Mary?/Is that Mary speaking?</p> <p>This is Mary speaking.</p> <p>Is Mike in/there?</p> <p>May I leave a message?</p> <p>Could you take a message?</p> <p>Could you ask him/her to call me back?</p> <p>Thank you. I'll call again/call her back.</p>	<p>I'm sorry he's out at the moment.</p> <p>This is John (speaking).</p> <p>Who is that?</p> <p>Who is calling/speaking?</p> <p>Hold on (for a moment), please.</p> <p>Just hold the line a minute, please.</p> <p>Could I know who is calling?</p> <p>Hello! 6098724.</p> <p>May I take a message for you?</p>

17. 偏爱、喜好、厌恶与应答 (Preference, likes, dislikes and responding)

Preference, likes and dislikes	Responses
<p>What's your favorite subject?</p> <p>What subjects are you interested in?</p> <p>What sports do you like best?</p>	<p>My favorite movie star is Ben stiller.</p> <p>I like sports. / I love sports./ I hate sports./ I dislike maths.</p> <p>I'm very fond of stamp collecting.</p> <p>I'm interested in maths. /I really enjoy the song.</p> <p>I'm crazy about diving.</p>

18. 购物 (Shopping)

Shop assistant	Customer
What can I do for you? Can I help you?/May I help you?	I'd like to buy a bag./I want to buy a bag./ I'm looking for a skirt for my daughter./Can you show me this pair of sports shoes?
What color /kind do you like/want? What size do you want/take?	How much is it?/What's the price of it?/What's the charge for it?/How much shall I pay for it?/How much does it cost?/ How much is it all together, please?/What does it come to?
How many/much do you want/need?	I'm afraid it is too expensive. Do you have any cheaper ones?
It is ten yuan./ It sells at 2 pounds a bottle. It's on sale.	Can I try it on?
That'll be 30 dollars with the tax./That comes to 30 dollars.	Just this one, please./I want three.
Yes. Try this one please. It's cheaper.	Here is the money./Here is 100 yuan.
Thank you. Here is your change.	

19. 求职 (Looking for a job)

Interviewer	Interviewee
Where did you graduate from?	I'd like to apply for the job.
Do you have any experience?	I graduated from ...
What about your experience?	My major is ...
Can you speak English well?	Is it still open?/Do you have openings?
What kind of job are you applying for?	Yes, I have worked in a company for...
What kind of education have you got?	I'm applying for a ...position.
Would you like to come and fill out an application form?	What's the salary, please?
How much are you looking for?	Do I have to work overtime?
	Thank you for your consideration.

20. 求助与提供帮助 (Asking for and offering help)

Offers	Responses
Can/Could/May I help you?	Accept the offering
What can I do for you?	Thanks. That would be fine.
Would you like me to help you with your lesson?	That's very kind of you.
	Thank you for your help.
Is there anything I can do for you?	Yes, please.
Do you want me to help you?	Here, please take my bag.
	Refuse the offering
	No, thanks./Thank you./Thank you all the same./
	That's very kind of you. But I can manage it myself.

21. 预订 (Reservation)

Receptionist	Customer
Room reservations. Can I help you?	I'd like to book/ reserve a double room for next Tuesday.
The current rate is \$ 50 per night.	What's the rate, please?
Could you tell me your name, sir?	It's Moore.
What time would you like your table?	Perhaps 7:30.
For how many people?	Let me see. 6 people.
By the way, we only keep your table till 8:00 pm.	I'd like to book/ reserve a table for dinner this evening.
Allow me to confirm the reservation.	We'd like to sit by the window.
We look forward to seeing you next Tuesday.	

22. 意愿与打算 (Intentions and plans)

Intentions and plans
What's your plan for National Day?
What are you going to do in the new term?
I want to be a famous football player in the future.
I plan to invite Mr. Zhang to our wedding.
I'd like to take part in more sporting events.
I hope to work in Alibaba.
I wish to live in Beijing.



跟踪训练

一、补全对话 (每空只能填写一个单词)

- _____ do you do? I don't think we've met. My name is John.
—How _____ you do?
- What's _____ sport?
—I like swimming best.
- _____ do you go to bed?
—I usually go to bed at 9:30, and at about 11 o'clock on weekends.
- What's the _____ today?
—It's sunny today, but the radio says it will be rainy on Friday.
- Excuse me, Mrs. Smith. I'm afraid I can't finish my homework today.
— _____ the matter?
—I have a headache, and I have to see a _____.
- Excuse me, _____ is the watch?
—Usually it's 120 yuan, but today it's only half price.
- Hello! Could I _____ John Smith, please?
—Smith? There is no Smith here. I'm afraid you've got the wrong number.
- Are you _____ order?

- Yes, I'd like a hamburger and an ice cream, please.
9. —You know, we have a three-day holiday next month. Do you want to go for a picnic?
—That's a great _____. _____ do you want to go?
—To the beach.
10. —I'm going to Qingdao to spend my summer holiday.
—Really? Have a _____.
11. —Hello, Jane! _____ are you _____?
—I'm fine. Thank you.
12. —Oh, dear, I have passed the driving test.
—Congratulations!
—_____!
13. —Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to the railway station?
—Sorry, I'm a stranger here.
—Thank you _____ the _____.
14. —Excuse me, _____ is it?
—Look, there's a clock over there. It says three thirty.
15. —What's _____ you, John?
—I don't feel very well.
16. —Tom, May I use your bike?
—_____, but you can use it tomorrow.
17. —I'm sorry for forgetting to bring your books.
—It _____.
18. —_____ me, sir. This is a non-smoking school.
—Oh, _____. I didn't know that. I won't again.
19. —Let's go swimming, _____?
—OK, let's go.
20. —How are you getting on with your cleaning? Do you need any help?
—That's very _____ you, but I think I'm all right.
21. —Excuse me, can you tell me _____ the nearest bank_____, please?
—Mm, let me think. Oh yes! It's past the post office, next to a big market.
22. —What's _____ today?
—It's March 12, Tree Planting Day.
23. —_____ does this book cost?
—At least one dollar.
24. —Could I _____ Mr. Johnson?
—I'm afraid he isn't in. This is Mary speaking. Can I help you?
25. —Lucy, _____ our English teacher, Miss Zhao.

- Glad to meet you, Miss Zhao.
26. —Would you like some more orange, sir?
—_____, _____. I have had enough.
27. —Happy New Year!
—The _____ you!
28. —You look more beautiful with that hat.
—_____. I'm _____ to hear you say that.
29. —_____ shall we meet, at 6:00 or at 6:30?
—Well, _____ time is OK.
30. —I believe we've met somewhere before.
—No, I don't _____.
31. —Could we have the honor of your presence at the party?
—_____, I can't. But _____ anyway.
32. —Hi, Eric! You went to the cinema last night, didn't you?
—Yes, I went there with my sister.
—_____ do you _____ the film?
—Wonderful.
33. —_____ we go to the New Sichuan Restaurant for our lunch?
—Great! I've been expecting that.
34. —I enjoyed a very good holiday in my hometown.
—Oh, I'm glad _____ that.
35. —I have made a decision to spend my holiday on the beach.
—Sounds wonderful. I'm sure you'll _____ good time.
36. —Do you have any _____?
—After graduation, I have been working at the personnel department of Great Universal Advertising Agency.
37. —What's your expected _____?
—I _____ to be paid according to my abilities.
38. —Excuse me, I am Sun Lin. I am here about your advertisement for a tour guide. Is it still _____?
—Yes. One more is needed.
—Oh, I am so lucky. I want to _____ for it.
39. —Can you tell me what your career _____ is?
—I hope to _____ a great businessman like Ma Yun in the future.
40. —Excuse me, I'm _____ in the job as a tour guide. Do you have any _____?
—Not right now, but we can keep your name on the file.

二、补全对话（用适当的短语或句子完成对话）

1. —What's up, Mary?

—

2. —How are things going?

—

3. —

—Nice to meet you, Mary. My name is John.

4. —I think it's time for us to leave now. Bye-bye.

—

5. —I don't feel well today.

—What's the matter?

—

6. —

—OK. I'd like to have hamburgers.

7. —Would you like some more bread?

—

8. —Well, it's a wonderful day. I wonder if you'd like to go boating with us.

—

9. —

—It's hard to say. I like many kinds of animals, for example, dogs, cats, rabbits and monkeys.

10. —I'm sorry to have you waiting for a long time.

—

11. —Thank you for your help.

—

12. —Would you please help me move this box?

— . Oh,...it's too heavy. We've got to do it together.

13. —

—It's cloudy today.

14. —

—It's Monday.

15. —

—It's October 1st.

第二部分 答题策略

一、英语知识运用

应试技巧和案例分析

英语知识运用是以选择题的形式来考查的。该题型主要有“题干”和“选项”两部分组成，“题干”通常是留有空白的一个句子、一组对话或附有相关语境信息的图、文、表等，要求考生从每题所给的四个选项中选择一个符合语境或语意的正确答案。

英语知识运用选择题的内容主要涉及词汇、固定搭配和情景交际等方面，题干比较灵活，语境覆盖面广，主要考查考生对英语基础知识的应用及在具体语境中理解语法与灵活运用语言的能力。因此，要做好英语知识运用选择题，提高答题的准确率，考生在复习中掌握一些基本的解题方法很有必要。

答题思路：

1. 推敲题干，理解语境，粗读选项

大部分的选择題，粗看选项，就能找准考点，但很多交际式试题就需要分析题干与选项的关系，才能明确该题考查的知识点。

2. 逻辑推理，排除干扰，正确选择

找准考查内容的角度，仅仅是正确解题的思路萌芽。要选出答案就需要根据题干设计，从句子结构、习惯用语、句意选择、语意与语境搭配等不同角度进行逻辑推敲，还应注意仔细阅读其词序，避免类似形式的干扰。具体方法有直接法、排除法、推理法、比较法、固定搭配等，有时要综合运用各种方法。

(1) 直接法。

主要用于四个选项是同一个词或短语的不同变化形式、固定搭配及语意与语境搭配等题。做题时要利用题干提供的信息，找准考点，有时还需考虑固定搭配等，然后直接选出正确答案。

例1 Summer holiday is coming. About two _____ students in our school will go camping.

A. hundred B. hundreds C. hundred of D. hundreds of (2008, 2)

解析：英语中百、千、万等数量词表约数时（即与 of 连用）用复数，表具体数量（其前有具体的数词限定）时用单数，也不能与 of 连用。空格前的 two 决定了应用单数，所以答案为 A。

例 2 We should stop _____ water, for it is limited in the world.

A. to waste B. waste C. wasted D. wasting (2009, 6)

解析：stop doing 停止做某事，stop to do 停下来去做某事，根据句意“我们应该停止浪费水，因为水是有限的”可知应该使用“stop doing”这一结构，答案为 D。

例 3 —Whose school uniform is this?

—_____.

A. Peter B. Peter's C. It's Peter D. Its Peter's (2010, 1)

解析：Peter's 是名词性所有格，表示彼得的。根据句意：“——这是谁的校服？——彼得的”可知答案为 B。

例 4 —Would you like _____ some fruit?

—No, thanks. I don't feel like anything now.

A. have B. had C. having D. to have (2014, 9)

解析：从空格前的 would you like 可以看出考查固定短语 would like to do sth.。根据句意“——你想要些水果吗？——不，谢谢！我现在什么都不想吃”可知答案为 D。

(2) 排除法。

排除法——顾名思义，就是依据句子结构、句意、习惯用法或题干提供的其他相关信息排除某些选项，使选择变得简单、直接，从而快速地找出正确答案的一种方法。

例 1 Boys, don't touch the machine, _____ you may hurt yourselves.

A. and B. but C. or D. so (2008, 3)

解析：英语句法中的“祈使句加 and 或 or 再加句子”结构，相当于 if 引导的状语从句，当主句表示的是满足条件从句能达到的积极肯定意味或是说话人希望得到的结果时，用 and，否则用 or。句意“不要触摸这机器，否则，可能伤到自己”表示的是不希望发生的结果，应该用 or。答案为 C。

例 2 There are quite a few books on the shelf, but _____ of them is useful to him.

A. both B. all C. neither D. none (2008, 4)

解析：根据句意“书架上有许多书”可排除 A 选项和 C 选项。因谓语动词是单数，故排除 B 选项。答案为 D。

例 3 —Do you know the place _____ we'll build a library?

—Yes. It's next to our dining room.

A. that B. where C. which D. what (2009, 11)

解析：根据句子结构，是定语从句，所以排除 D 选项；所修饰的先行词在定语从句中作地点状语，所以排除 A 选项和 C 选项。答案为 B。

例 4 —Do you know the game of Go(围棋)? It is an interesting chess game.

—Yes. There _____ a match in our school club tomorrow afternoon.

A. will be B. will have C. has D. is (2010, 19)

解析: 根据 tomorrow afternoon 是一般将来时态的时间状语, 所以排除 C 选项和 D 选项; 根据 “There be” 句型排除 B 选项。所以答案为 A。

例 5 — _____ lovely weather it is! Shall we go for a picnic?

— That's a good idea.

A. What a B. What C. How a D. How (2014, 8)

解析: 该题考查感叹句。根据 weather 是不可数名词, 排除 A 和 C 选项, 再根据感叹句句型 “What+形容词+不可数名词+主谓!” 可知答案为 B。

(3) 推理法。

有的选择题, 仔细观察各选项, 从语法结构上分析, 不止一个正确, 甚至全对; 从词意上考虑, 某些选项又与句意不符, 所以要通过逻辑推理才能得出正确的答案, 特别是对交际英语考查时, 更需结合题干提供的语境及问与答之间的必然联系来推导出答案。

例 1 —I don't know how to use the digital camera.

—It doesn't matter. Here is the _____.

A. message B. instruction
C. information D. advertisement (2008, 11)

解析: 由句意 “——我不会用数码相机。——没关系, 这里有……” 和选项: A. message(消息), B. instruction(说明), C. information(信息), D. advertisement(广告), 可知选 B。

例 2 —Could you tell me _____?

—Sure. He's a mechanic.

A. where is your father B. what does your father do
C. where your father is D. what your father is (2008, 13)

解析: 从句子结构和选项看, 考查的是宾语从句。宾语从句的语序应是陈述句语序; 从意思看, 询问的是他父亲的职业, 按英语惯用法疑问词用 what, 所以选 D。

例 3 —What do you want to be in the future, Gary?

— _____. I'm so interested in car repairing.

A. A typist B. A mechanic
C. A cashier D. A computer programmer (2010, 13)

解析: 从句子结构分析, 四个选项都符合。typist 打字员; mechanic 技工; cashier 收银员; computer programmer 计算机程序设计员。根据答语 “我对汽车修理很感兴趣” 可知答案为 B。

例 4 —I didn't win the match.

—Don't lose heart! _____ you work hard, hope is always around you.

A. Even though B. Unless
C. As long as D. As far as (2011, 17)

解析: 从句子结构分析, 四个选项都符合。even though 即使, unless 除非, as long as 只要, as far as 和……一样远。根据句意 “——我输了比赛。——别灰心! 只要你努力,

希望总会伴你左右”可知答案为 C。

例 5 — What does Xiao Zhang look like?

— He is _____.

A. my brother B. tall and thin C. a teacher D. 20 years old(2014, 2)

解析：单从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。由句意“——小张长得怎么样？——他又高又瘦”可知答案为 B。

例 6 — I'm going to a job interview. I feel a little _____.

— Take it easy. Listening to music can help you relax.

A. comfortable B. satisfied
C. nervous D. disappointed (2014, 26)

解析：单从句子结构分析，四个选项都符合。由句意“——我要去参加工作面试了。我感到有点紧张。——放轻松。听音乐有助于你放松”可知答案为 C。

(4) 比较法。

有的选择题，读完题干就明确知道了考点，但四个选项都是考查的内容，只是排序或结构有差别，这就需要利用所学的语法知识和词汇知识仔细进行比较，最后得出正确答案。

例 1 —Can I have a look at the book _____ you bought yesterday?

—Of course you can. Here it is.

A. what B. who C. / D. where (2008, 6)

解析：根据句子结构看，考查的是定语从句。比较四个选项，排除不能引导定语从句的 A 选项；B 选项 who 引导的定语从句，所修饰的词应该指人；D 选项 where 引导的定语从句所修饰的词应该指代地点，在定语从句中作状语。而考查的定语从句所修饰的词“book”指物，关系代词在定语从句中作 bought 的宾语，可以是关系代词 that, which, 也可以省略，所以选 C。

例 2 Take my advice and you'll see _____ things aren't as bad as you think.

A. whether B. if C. that D. what (2010, 11)

解析：根据句子结构看，考查的是宾语从句。比较四个选项，A 选项和 B 选项表示是否，C 选项无具体意义，D 选项表示什么。根据句意“采纳我的建议，你会明白事情并不像你想的那样糟糕”可知答案为 C。

例 3 Lily graduated from a vocational school. If she wants to apply for the position as an assistant, she knows she will _____.

<p>ASSISTANT WANTED FOR BUSY RESTAURANT Some evenings and weekend work All meals free Tel:4320167</p>

A. be very busy on weekends B. work only in evenings
C. only have free meals on weekends D. email for more information (2014, 28)

解析：根据题目看，考查的是信息识别。比较四个选项，可以根据 some evenings 排除 B 选项；根据 All meals free 排除 C 选项；根据 Tel:4320167 排除 D 选项；再根据 Some evenings and weekend work 判断出 A 选项正确。

以上是做选择题常用的几种答题方法。要取得好成绩，仅靠掌握一些答题技巧是远远不够的。因此，要做好选择题必须牢固掌握英语基础知识，并学会灵活运用；认真观察题干所提供的语境，将所考查的语言点进行全面、系统的分析。



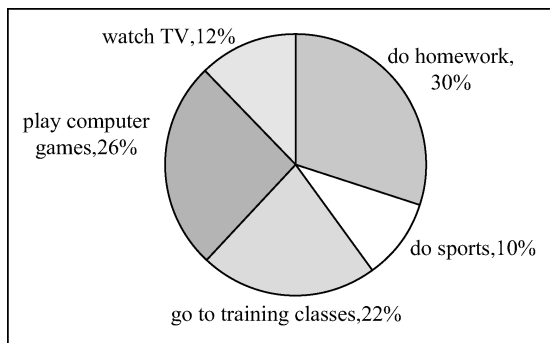
专项训练一

1. —_____ I'm Albert from the US.
—Pleased to meet you.
A. Let me introduce myself. B. This is Albert speaking.
C. I'd like to introduce Allen. D. May I introduce Andy?
2. —_____ pen can't write well. Can I use _____?
—Of course. Here it is.
A. My; your B. My; yours C. I; you D. Mine; yours
3. —Why not go cycling with us tomorrow?
—_____.
A. Many thanks B. Forgive me
C. That sounds great D. Here you are
4. The doctor gave Mr. White a careful _____ and told him to have a good rest at home.
A. occupation B. examination C. tradition D. condition
5. —How heavily it is raining!
—What a pity! We have to _____ our picnic till next week.
A. put on B. put out C. put off D. put up
6. —We'd like to have a dinner party in your hotel. Could you find a room for us?
—_____. For how many people?
A. Not at all B. No problem C. No way D. No thanks
7. —You look sad. What's up?
—_____ we tried our best, we lost the game.
A. When B. Where C. Whether D. Although
8. A new technology has been _____ to the factory to reduce pollution.
A. celebrated B. damaged C. introduced D. decorated
9. In spring, all _____ things come back to life and a new world comes to us.

- A. living B. live C. alive D. lively

10. —What did 22% of the students do after school according to the survey?

—They _____.



- A. watched TV B. did homework
C. went to training classes D. played computer games

11. —Oh, Kelly! Do you live here?

—No. This house is _____. I'm here to see his baby.

- A. my brother B. my brothers C. my brother's D. my brothers'

12. The little boy is _____ about new things around himself and always asks some interesting questions.

- A. current B. crowded C. curious D. commercial

13. —_____?

—It's December 20th.

- A. What time is it B. What day is it today
C. What's the date today D. What's your favorite season

14. —_____ will it take to fly to Paris?

—About ten hours.

- A. How old B. How far C. How often D. How long

15. —Shall we go to the concert now?

—Sorry, I can't. I _____ my homework.

- A. do B. was doing C. am doing D. did

16. It's hot today. I feel _____ going for a swimming with my friends.

- A. with B. like C. beside D. off

17. Be sure to _____ your name before you hand in your test paper.

- A. send up B. pick up C. turn down D. write down

7. —Excuse me, where is the _____ room? I want to try on the new jeans.
—Look, there is one just on your left.
A. meeting B. dressing C. waiting D. washing
8. — Oh! We've just missed the 7 o'clock film.
— _____. It'll be on again in an hour.
A. With pleasure B. Don't worry
C. Have fun D. Good idea
9. Of the two types of communication, I think the _____ is more popular in the workplace.
A. latter B. later C. late D. latest
10. — Thank you for helping me solve the problem.
— _____.
A. Of course B. All right
C. It's my pleasure D. Take it easy
11. — _____. Where is the nearest post office?
—Go along the road and turn left at the first crossing. You can't miss it.
A. Excuse me B. I'm sorry
C. Beg your pardon D. What a pity
12. —Don't _____ too late, or you will feel tired in class tomorrow.
—I won't, Mum.
A. hurry up B. get up C. wake up D. stay up
13. When can the customers have dinner at the restaurant?
- NOTICE

RESTAURANT CLOSED

For decoration

March 15-April 6
- A. On April 8th B. On April 6th
C. On March 18th D. On March 15th
14. The airline is taking steps to _____ safety of the passengers on its aircraft.
A. escape B. ensure C. envy D. exist
15. The project requires teamwork. Nothing could be achieved _____ we work well together.
A. if B. unless C. once D. though

16. I still remember my uncle came back home _____ a snowy morning.
A. in B. at C. on D. for
17. —We will set off at 8 o'clock tomorrow. Don't be late.
—OK. I will be there ten minutes _____.
A. sooner B. earlier C. faster D. slower
18. —I'll go to Qingdao for a holiday next week.
—Great! _____
A. Glad to see you. B. Good morning.
C. Have a good time! D. Good job!
19. —Hello, is Mike there?
—Sorry, he isn't in _____.
A. in a moment B. for a moment
C. at the moment D. for the moment
20. —How much is the new T-shirt?
— _____ today. It's only ¥ 30.
A. It's a pleasure B. It's a pity
C. It's on sale D. It's up to you



专项训练三

1. —Hi, Bob. _____?
—I'm all right, thanks. Just a little tired.
A. How are you doing B. How do you do
C. What day is it today D. What's your favorite sport
2. —What does your sister do?
— _____.
A. She is very thin B. She looks very young
C. She is a nurse D. She does the housework
3. Don't get off the bus unless it stops, _____ you may get hurt.
A. so B. but C. and D. or
4. —Let's go for a picnic this Saturday, _____?
—Great!
A. will you B. shall we C. would you D. should you

5. Lots of famous paintings and ancient books were _____ in the museum.
A. drilled B. delivered C. deleted D. displayed
6. —Oh, Mr. Smith, I'm not quite _____ today.
—You should go to see a doctor at once.
A. myself B. my C. mine D. me
7. —Excuse me. Could you tell me _____ the movie will start?
—In half an hour.
A. how far B. how soon C. how long D. how much
8. —_____ beautiful gardens! Let's go out to take pictures.
—Sounds great!
A. How B. How a C. What D. What a
9. —Have a nice weekend!
—_____.
A. You're welcome B. The same to you
C. That's all right D. With pleasure
10. We are planning to sign the _____ with the company after examining its conditions carefully.
A. contract B. community C. comment D. committee
11. Firefighters have been called to _____ the fire in the city center.
A. put off B. put on C. put out D. put up
12. —I'm sorry. I forgot to bring your book.
—_____.
A. You are welcome B. My pleasure
C. It doesn't matter D. Beg your pardon
13. —Where did you _____ your weekend?
—On the beach. We had a wonderful time there.
A. cost B. spend C. take D. pay
14. Alice wants to buy some books in the cafeteria. She should go there at _____.

<p>Book Fair</p> <p>Many great books to choose from!</p> <p>June 3 and 4, 9 am to 5 pm</p> <p>In the college cafeteria</p>
--

A. 8 am, June 3

B. 5 am, June 3

- 

专项训练四

- 78

- 79

16. —The Belt and Road Initiative(一带一路倡议) is popular with more and more countries in the world.

—_____. China is better known as a big country.

- A. I don't think so B. I agree with you
C. That's a good idea D. The same to you

17. Now more and more farmers use the Internet to sell their local _____ grown on the farm.

- A. produce B. sight C. culture D. custom

18. President Xi's speech will be _____ nationwide.

- A. broadcast B. claimed C. invested D. exchanged

19. What is Qingdao known for?

Qingdao

Scenic spots: Mount Laoshan, May 4th Square, Luxun Park, etc.

Famous for: nice beaches, good weather, delicious food, rich nightlife, Tsingtao Beer

- A. Long beaches. B. Good salt.
C. Rich nightlife. D. Xuehua Beer.

20. I'm _____ what you said just now.

- A. confused with B. confused about
C. confuse D. confused



专项训练五

1. —Hello, this is Tom.

—Hello, Tom. Would you like to _____ the game this afternoon?

- A. take B. attend C. join D. join in

2. The work was finished on time and within_____.

- A. plumber B. budget C. committee D. destination

3. —Mum, can I leave my homework for tomorrow?

—I'm afraid not. Don't _____ what you should do today till tomorrow.

- A. put on B. put off C. put up D. put out

4. If you want to buy this dress, you'd better _____ first to make sure it fits you.

- A. try it on B. take it off C. tidy it up D. pay for it

5. —She didn't come to school yesterday, did she?

- _____, though she was not feeling well.
- A. No, she didn't B. Yes, she didn't
C. No, she did D. Yes, she did
6. —What are you going to do this afternoon, Lily?
—There is something wrong with my bike. I'll have it _____.
A. repair B. repaired C. repairing D. to be repaired
7. —Mum, I was the first to reach the top of the mountain.
—Good job, Jack! I'm _____ of you.
A. careful B. proud C. tired D. afraid
8. —_____?
—She works as a secretary in a foreign company.
A. What does your sister like B. Where does your sister live
C. What does your sister do D. What is your sister's future goal
9. —Is it convenient to go sightseeing in Qingdao?
—Of course. _____ there are beautiful sights, there are buses in Qingdao.
A. Unless B. Though C. While D. Where
10. Repairing cars is my _____.
A. occupation B. property C. suspect D. keyboard
11. After we _____ the hotel, we will go to the Qingdao Pier.
A. arrive B. arrive at C. get at D. reach at
12. —TV says there will be a storm tomorrow.
—_____. I planned to go climbing with my classmates.
A. Bad luck B. I'm afraid so
C. Sounds good D. I hope so
13. My neighbor asked me _____ I heard the big noise last night or not.
A. if B. whether C. what D. when
14. _____ the teachers in our school is 280, and _____ of them are women teachers.
A. A number of; three fifth B. A number of; three fifths
C. The number of; three fifth D. The number of; three fifths
15. Jim sold most of his things. He has hardly _____ left in the house.
A. everything B. nothing C. something D. anything
16. _____ beautifully Linda sings! I have never heard _____ voice.

- 83

11. —The leather shoes look nice. _____?
—That comes to 500 yuan.
A. What color are they B. How much are they
C. What size do you take D. How do you like them
12. —Can you introduce the school to me?
—OK. This is the school _____ I studied ten years ago.
A. where B. when C. which D. that
13. In the beginning, the teacher gave us a _____ introduction about the subject.
A. outstanding B. urgent C. poisonous D. brief
14. He got a fine fame for being _____ with his money to help others.
A. generous B. selfish C. bitter D. advanced
15. —Our English teacher works very hard and hardly ever feels tired.
—I think she is really _____.
A. confident B. energetic C. outgoing D. creative
16. He's never seen such a good film, _____ he?
A. has B. isn't C. is D. hasn't
17. _____ thirty pounds a big sum to you?
A. Will be B. Is C. Are D. Were
18. Mr. Taylor takes his four-year-old child to the exhibition. They will pay _____ for regular tickets.

Ticket Prices (Nov-Sept)	Grown-ups	Children/ Students	Seniors
Single Exhibit Ticket	\$ 6.00	\$ 4.00	\$ 5.50
Regular Ticket	\$ 10.95	\$ 5.95	\$ 8.95
Children 5 and under are free			

- A. \$ 5.95 B. \$ 14.9 C. \$ 16.8 D. \$ 10.95
19. The hospital is doing its best to _____ the patients with the best treatment and service.
A. offer B. give C. provide D. order
20. —Sir, could you please put out your cigarette? This is a non-smoking area.
—_____.
A. Not at all B. I'm sorry about this
C. Sure, I'd love to D. Never mind



专项训练七

- May I take this book out?
— No, you _____.
A. needn't B. don't have to C. mustn't D. may not
- We always keep _____ spare paper, in case we run out.
A. too much B. a number of C. plenty of D. a good many
- Linda often jogs by the lake in the morning. Seeing the wood sign, she knows it warns people not to _____ in the lake.



- A. sit alone B. boat C. swim D. fish
- He wanted to know _____.
A. whether he speaks at the meeting
B. when the meeting would start
C. what he's going to do at the meeting
D. where would the meeting be held
- Don't _____ everywhere. We should put them into the dustbin.
A. throw away them B. threw them away
C. throw them away D. throwing them away
- When I got to his home, I _____ that he _____ to Beijing.
A. told; had gone B. was told; went
C. was told; had gone D. told; had been
- This medicine is _____ if taken in large quantities.
A. bitter B. salty C. poisonous D. effective
- Cindy has been sent to hospital because she _____ heart disease.
A. resulted from B. suffered from
C. heard from D. kept from
- I have bought an English-Chinese dictionary.
—When and where _____ you _____ it?
A. do; buy B. did; buy C. have; bought D. had; bought

10. —You are not allowed to smoke here.

—_____.

A. I don't know

B. Excuse me

C. Oh, I'm sorry

D. Don't mention it

11. If you want to buy your mother a dress, its previous price is 350 yuan, you can only spend _____ yuan now.

BUY NOW
CHRISTMAS SALE

Food & Fruit 25%	Clothes 50%	Shoes 30%
---------------------	----------------	--------------

A. 87.5

B. 175

C. 105

D. 350

12. A concert will be held to _____ money for homeless people.

A. collect

B. send

C. take

D. spend

13. Nobody believed his reason for being absent from school _____ he had to meet his uncle at the airport.

A. why

B. that

C. where

D. because

14. When you receive my email, please _____ me as soon as possible.

A. lead to

B. reply to

C. turn to

D. return to

15. When you are going out for a trip, you should have everything ready _____.

A. at times

B. ahead of time

C. in time

D. on time

16. —I _____ a fruit salad half an hour ago. Can it _____ now?

—One more minute, please.

A. ordered; be served

B. have paid for; serve

C. have ordered; be served

D. paid; serve

17. —_____?

—He is tall and attractive.

A. How is Jack doing

B. How does Jack like it

C. What does Jack look like

D. What does Jack like best

18. I _____ all my friends will be present at my birthday party.

A. did hope

B. does hope

C. do hope

D. to hope

19. —Do you want to eat here, sir?

—No. Just fish and chips to _____, please.

A. get away

B. go away

C. take away

D. throw away

20. —Do you think you could do it without help?

—_____. This is not the first time for me.

- A. Take care B. Hurry up C. Not exactly D. Don't worry



专项训练八

1. —Would you mind if I smoke here?

—_____, but I think you'd better do it over there.

- A. Yes, please B. I'm sorry
C. Certainly not D. No, go ahead

2. After Yang Liwei succeeded in circling the earth, _____ our astronauts desire to do is to walk in space.

- A. where B. what C. that D. how

3. Don't turn off the computer before closing all programs, _____ you could have problems.

- A. or B. and C. so D. but

4. The _____ shoes were covered with mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got into _____ car.

- A. girl's; Tom's B. girls'; Toms' C. girls'; Tom's D. girl's; Toms'

5. —Will you please sing for the sick at the city hospital to cheer them up?

—_____.

- A. Excuse me. I'm afraid not B. It's very kind of you
C. Certainly. I'll be glad to D. I'm sorry to hear that

6. —_____

—Yeah, I've just passed the driving test.

- A. You look disappointed. B. You are looking so happy.
C. Do you feel stressed? D. Are you worried about it?

7. I think Bob is the suitable person to take the job because he can do the work well with _____ money and _____ people.

- A. less; less B. less; more C. more; fewer D. less; fewer

8. Can you help me _____ those exercise books? I got a different number each time.

- A. carry B. move C. write D. count

9. —Could you help me _____ the meeting materials, Mr. Swift?

—No problem.

- A. break out B. come out C. hand out D. put out

10. You had better ask for _____ advice before going into a new market.

- A. professional B. traditional C. medical D. physical

11. A recent study showed the mixed messages are enough to _____ the Chinese public.





- A. complain B. compete C. confuse D. compare

12. —Hello! I didn't know you _____ in London. How long have you been here?

—For two months.

- A. are B. will be
C. have been D. were

13. Larry is watching the weather report on TV. The highest temperature of all the cities is _____.

Shanghai July 24	Lanzhou July 24	Nanjing July 24	Shenyang July 24
Light rain 	Sunny 	Heavy rain 	Cloudy 
33-28 °C	29-15 °C	32-26 °C	29-20 °C

- A. 33 °C in Shanghai B. 29 °C in Lanzhou
C. 32 °C in Nanjing D. 20 °C in Shenyang

14. The young couple usually don't go downstairs until they _____ all the food in the fridge.

- A. run after B. run into C. run against D. run out of

15. All the leading newspapers _____ the trade talks between China and the United States.

- A. published B. impressed C. printed D. reported

16. I've lost my pen. I'd like to buy _____.

- A. another one B. other one C. it D. new one

17. —The Chinese scientist Tu Youyou won the 2015 Nobel Prize.

—Her _____ has saved millions of lives across the world.

- A. victory B. story C. industry D. discovery

18. —Excuse me, _____?

—No, it's direct to Jinan.

- A. which bus goes to Jinan B. does this bus go to Jinan

- C. do I have to change buses D. can I go there by bus
19. —Could you tell me _____ during the coming summer vacation?
—I'll go traveling with my parents.
- A. what you did B. what did you do
C. what you will do D. what will you do
20. —Wow! _____ beautiful the music is!
—Yes. That's my favorite.
- A. What B. What a C. What an D. How

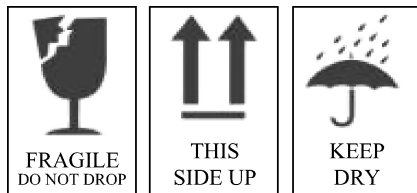


专项训练九

1. —Tomorrow will be fine. Shall we go out for a picnic?
—_____.
- A. Good luck B. Sounds great C. Have fun D. Take it easy
2. In recent years, great changes _____ in my hometown.
- A. taken place B. has taken place
C. have taken place D. takes place
3. —May I park my car here, sir?
—_____. You see, there's much traffic here.
- A. Never mind B. Of course not
C. You'd better not D. Yes, please
4. Jack didn't run _____ to catch up with the other runners.
- A. fast enough B. quick enough C. enough slow D. as far as
5. The robbers had no trouble in _____ the bank, but when they came out, the police were waiting for them.
- A. breaking out B. breaking into
C. breaking up D. breaking away from
6. If you happen to get lost in the wild, you'd better stay _____ you are and wait for help.
- A. why B. when C. where D. what
7. _____ the website of the Fire Department in your city, and you will learn a lot about fire fighting.
- A. Having searched B. To search

- C. Searching D. Search
8. The boss is trying to put _____ on his employees by saying that those who cannot observe the regulations will be fired.
- A. impression B. force C. ability D. pressure
9. —I was watching TV when the fire broke out last night. What about you, Lily?
—I _____ computer games.
- A. played B. have played C. had play D. was playing
10. —I've got a piece of good news. Our football team won the game.
—Really? _____
- A. Well done! B. With pleasure.
C. That's all right. D. What a pity!
11. —Please call me at 8:00 tomorrow morning. I'm kind of forgetful.
—Don't worry about that, you'll be surely _____.
- A. related B. reminded C. circled D. delivered
12. —Two hundred yuan for such a T-shirt! You must be joking!
—I'm not joking. It's _____ silk.
- A. made up B. made of C. made up of D. made in
13. Every possible means _____, but it seems that nothing will prevent the situation from getting worse.
- A. has tried B. have tried C. has been tried D. have been tried
14. Mr. Smith works in a big _____, which sells new computers and mobile phones.
- A. cooperation B. organization C. instruction D. corporation
15. —How much does it _____ to fly from Beijing to Haikou?
—About 1,000 yuan.
- A. cost B. pay C. spend D. take
16. If you are a postman, you should pay attention to _____.

BE CAREFUL!



- A. time B. transportation C. size D. price

17. When you've finished with that book, don't forget to put it back on the shelf, _____?
- A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you
18. We shouldn't _____ hope in face of difficulties.
- A. pick up B. give up C. grow up D. set up
19. —Hello. ABC Company. Can I help you?
—Oh, sorry. I _____ have dialed the wrong number.
- A. need B. have to C. must D. shall
20. —What makes him _____ in the talent show?
—His quick action and fluent English.
- A. stand for B. stand up C. stand against D. stand out



专项训练十

1. —How about going out for a walk?
— _____.
- A. Oh, great. Good idea B. Fine, thank you
C. Congratulations D. With pleasure
2. _____ some old tables, his house was almost empty.
- A. Besides B. Except C. Except for D. But
3. —Are you ready to order, sir?
— _____.
- A. No, thanks B. Yes, sit down please
C. I'm afraid I have no time D. Let me look at the menu first
4. —Have you found the book _____ you lost yesterday?
—Yes. I left it in the library.
- A. who B. that C. when D. where
5. —Sam, you always get up early every morning. Do you like it?
—Not really, but _____.
- A. I used to it B. I'm used to it.
C. I used to do it D. I'm used to do it
6. By the time I locked the door, I realized I _____ my keys at home.
- A. had repaired B. had changed C. had forgotten D. had left

7. —Which do you prefer, a CD player or a Walkman?
—_____. I prefer an MP3.
A. Both B. Either C. Neither D. None
8. Who can tell me when _____?
A. the telephone is invented B. the telephone was invented
C. is the telephone invented D. was the telephone invented
9. Helen had to shout _____ above the sound of the music.
A. making herself hear B. to make herself hear
C. making herself heard D. to make herself heard
10. Do you know _____ Qingdao or not tomorrow?
A. whether are they leaving for B. whether they are leaving for
C. if they are leaving for D. if are they leaving for
11. Here is a new book. First _____ it and then tell me what you think of it.
A. look into B. look up C. look through D. look after
12. A new school was _____ in the village last year.
A. held up B. set up C. sent up D. brought up
13. —Would you please help me with the large box?
— _____.
A. That's all right B. With pleasure
C. No, I don't D. Not at all
14. Please add some salt _____ the soup, so that it may taste better.
A. up B. into C. with D. on
15. If no one _____ the phone at home, ring me at work.
A. answers B. returns C. replies D. receives
16. —Would you like to go cycling on Sunday morning?
—_____. I haven't been outdoors these days. I can't wait!
A. Sorry, I can't B. Sure, I'd love to
C. Not at all D. Forget it
17. —Don't worry. You can learn English as well as you wish.
— _____.
A. It's nothing serious B. Thank you. I'll do my best
C. Never mind D. I think so
18. We don't know how they manage to _____ four children and they're as poor as

church mice.

- A. bring up B. bring down C. bring in D. bring to

19. In April, the weather in some places in Shandong was really changeable. People still remember they have _____ four seasons in a week.

- A. organized B. experienced C. described D. included

20. Steve is searching for information about smart phones on the Net. From the survey chart, he finds that _____.

What kind of smart phone do you use?	
Kinds	Percentage of users (%)
iPhone	32.0
Android	51.4
Blackberry	9.3
Others	7.3

- A. Android is the most popular kind
B. more people use iPhones than Android
C. over one third of people use iPhones
D. Blackberry has the fewest users

二、阅读理解

应试技巧

阅读理解能力的测试是英语考试中必不可少的测试项目，主要考查学生对于不同体裁或不同题材语言材料的理解能力，以及通过材料的阅读，对材料中信息的捕获能力。应对此项能力的测试，考生要做到以下几方面：

- (1) 理解所读材料的主旨大意、中心思想，把握文章中的详细事实与细节；
- (2) 了解具体事实情节，理解其抽象含义。既要理解字面意思，又要理解其深层含义，包括作者的态度、观点、意图等；
- (3) 梳理全文的逻辑关系，根据逻辑关系进行判断和推理。

1. 根据以上要求，结合考试说明对英语教学的要求，不难总结出阅读理解题的命题规律及题型结构。一般来说，英语阅读理解题大致可分为两类语篇六种题型。

(1) 应用语篇，包括说明书、广告、价格表等条目型应用文，其特点是类别多、杂。题型设计，大致可以分为四种题型：

- ① 事实询问题；

- ② 数据推算题;
- ③ 识图解意题;
- ④ 主旨大意题。(多为判断该应用文的用途)

(2) 叙事性文字语篇, 有一定的故事情节或线索可循。题型设计, 也可以分为四种题型:

- ① 事实询问题;
- ② 推理判断题;
- ③ 主旨大意题;
- ④ 常识题。

2. 如何才能做好阅读理解题呢?

在阅读理解中, 要准确地把握主要事实或情节, 理顺它们之间的关系, 找出与事实或情节发展密切相关的词语, 为正确判断打下基础。

(1) 通篇阅读, 掌握大意。

首先通读全文, 找出短文中的主题句和概括性语段, 以把握全文脉络和中心思想。概括性的语段经常出现在首段或末段, 主题句可能出现在段首、段中或段末。

(2) 审读题目, 进行判断或选择。

读懂短文内容后再审读题目, 通过寻读法在原文中找出与每个问题相关的段落与词句, 然后依据短文内容对问题进行逐句细读, 认真推敲, 做出选择或者是非判断。

常用的阅读方法有:

① 细读与略读并举。语篇中的重点难点应仔细分析、揣摩, 尤其是体现语篇的大意, 暗示作者写作意图之处, 应仔细阅读, 其余篇幅略读。

② 跳读与查读并举。在问题的驱使下, 略过那些与本问题无关的句段, 直接搜寻与该问题有联系之处, 如查阅人名、地名、年代、数据等。

(3) 复读全文, 验证答案。

在完成所有的问题后, 要复读短文核对答案, 加深对短文的理解, 在此基础上再对每一问题进行复查, 对似是而非的句子, 一定要重新认真识别。

(4) 不同的题型要区别对待。

3. 阅读理解选择题型注意以下几点:

(1) 各小题所提供的四个选项, 有的是语法、结构上有错误, 有的是与短文的意思不符。解题时要把结构、语法错误的选项先排除, 再考虑其余选项是否符合短文内容。

(2) 对涉及文中某个词或句子的含义的选项, 要根据构词法及上下文内在逻辑关系进行猜测推理、去伪存真以选出正确答案。

(3) 对于涉及文章主旨、大意、作者意图及文章标题等选项, 要统观全文, 通过短文所提供的材料或学过的知识加以综合理解、分析推理, 从而推断出正确答案。

(4) 阅读的顺序一般是先读短文, 再看题目, 但是如果文章较长, 也可以先将测试

题浏览一遍，然后带着问题阅读。这样对与问题有关的段落、句子反应敏感，可以加快阅读速度。

(5) 对于条目型应用文，首先应分清各条目的内容及相互关系，再结合问题要求，迅速找到相关信息。

案例分析

阅读下面短文，根据短文内容选择正确答案。

Do you know what couch-potato means? Well, in America, the word is now often used. The American couch-potato becomes maybe even a part of the American tradition! You see, in America, many people often spend their free time sitting on a couch watching TV. As there are many channels to choose, the TV can be quite interesting and very addictive. One may sit and watch TV for hours and hours without stop! Well, these people who do nothing all day except watching TV are called couch-potatoes.

In America, when one watches TV, one is most often sitting on a couch. While watching TV, most of these people look so frozen that they almost look like dead things! Everyone is sitting still with eyes looking right into the same black box. Also because these people are addictive to TV, they don't take exercise and usually get very fat. So in many ways, these people look like real potatoes! Well, because they look so still and fat, and watch TV on a couch, they are all called couch-potatoes. Now that you know what a couch-potato means, the next time if you see someone watching TV too long, just say, "What a couch-potato!"

- The word "couch-potato" is often used in _____.
A. China B. America C. Japan D. France
- If a person is called a couch-potato, he or she _____.
A. likes sitting on a couch and watching TV
B. does nothing all day except taking exercise
C. must be very lazy
D. only watches TV in his free time
- Why does a couch-potato look like a real potato? Because he or she _____.
A. almost never moves while watching TV and gets very fat
B. is fat and dying and can not take exercise
C. likes eating potatoes on a couch while watching TV
D. is frozen in front of the black box
- The passage mainly tells us _____.
A. how to watch TV B. why couch-potatoes are very fat
C. what couch-potato means D. where the new word is used
- Which of the followings should be the writer's suggestion? _____.
A. Take more exercise B. Never watch TV

C. Don't sit on a couch

D. Don't watch TV too much

答案: 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. D

1. 第一段前两句明确指出, couch-potato 一词是用于美国, 所以选 B。

2. 从第一段 “Many people often spend their free time sitting on a couch watching TV” 和第二段的描述中我们可以看出被称作 “couch-potato” 的人喜欢坐在沙发上看电视, 所以答案 A 是正确的。

3. 从第二段第四、五句 “they don't take exercise and usually get very fat. So in many ways, these people look like real potatoes!” 可以得知答案 A 正确。

4. 从第一句就可以推断, 短文的主题是关于 “What does couch-potato mean?”, 而且纵观全文, 可发现就是这个话题, 所以选 C。

5. 从整个短文来看, 作者对 couch-potato 这种人不赞赏, 因为他们 “like sitting on a couch, almost never moves while watching TV and gets very fat” 所以建议 “Don't watch TV too much”, 所以选 D。



专项训练

A

Personal Information

Name: Wang Liang
Address: Block 2, 10th Floor, Happy Garden Jinan
Telephone: 85641169(Home), 85437829(Office)
Date of birth: 17 April, 1983
Place of birth: Qingdao
ID No.: _____

Education and Qualifications

9/2000-7/2003: High Secretarial College
Distinctions(优秀) in typing, shorthand(速记) and secretarial skills
International Secretarial Certificate(国际秘书证书)
9/1997-7/2000: No. 1 Vocational High School, Credits(荣誉) in English, Chinese, and passes in Geography, Mathematics and History
9/1994-7/1997: No. 303 Middle School

Experience

9/2003-present: Sanlian Co. Ltd. working as a full-time receptionist and typist
Date available: Three months from present
Award: First Prize in a typing skill contest
Hobbies: Swimming

Languages: Chinese, English

- Where was Wang Liang born?
A. Jinan. B. Qingdao. C. Dongying. D. Taian.
- Wang Liang worked as a(an) _____.
A. receptionist and typist B. accountant
C. CEO D. section manager
- When did Wang Liang graduate from the college?
A. In 2002. B. In 2000. C. In 2003. D. In 1997.
- Which of the following is not true according to the passage?
A. Wang Liang likes swimming.
B. Wang Liang is good at Chinese and English.
C. Wang Liang won the prize in a shorthand skill contest.
D. Wang Liang studied in No. 303 Middle School in 1995.
- The passage is mainly about Wang Liang's _____.
A. experience B. education C. hometown D. resume

B

Wanted

STAR HOTEL	HUNTER BOOKSTORE
<p>Five Waiters and Ten Waitresses: Aged 18-22. At least high school graduates. Good-looking, men at least 1.72 meters tall and women 1.65. Paid 1,600-2,200 dollars per month.</p> <p>One Secretary: Aged under 30. Female only. Good at writing and skilled at computer. Paid 2,000-3,000 dollars per month. If you are interested, call 465-4758. Fax: 6954828</p>	<p>Accountant: Aged between 25 and 40. With an experience of at least 2 years. With a degree and an accountant certificate. Paid 3,000-4,000 dollars monthly. With a practical knowledge of computer.</p> <p>Computer Salesclerk: Aged about 25. Basic education of 12 years or more. Good at computer. Paid 1,800-2,200 dollars monthly. Tel: 437-4398 Fax: 3485269</p>

- If you don't know how to use a computer, you can work as _____.
A. a secretary B. a waiter or waitress
C. an accountant D. a salesclerk

2. If you want to find a job in Star Hotel, you should be _____.
A. a woman
B. a university graduate
C. shorter than 1.65 meters
D. younger than 30 years old

3. If you work as a secretary, how much can you get at most monthly?
A. \$ 1,800.
B. \$ 2,200.
C. \$ 3,000.
D. \$ 4,000.

4. If you want to be an accountant, you have to satisfy the following conditions except _____.
A. being a woman
B. knowing how to use a computer well
C. an experience of at least 2 years
D. having an accountant certificate

5. Steve is 24 years old. He can apply for the job as _____.
A. a secretary
B. a waiter
C. an accountant
D. a computer salesclerk

C

GOING OUT OF BUSINESS					
BARGAINS! BARGAINS! THE SHOE BOX FINAL CLEARANCE					
ALL WOMEN'S SHOES		LAST 10 DAYS		ALL CHILDREN'S SHOES	
Now		SALE HOURS <u>DAILY</u>		Now	
Orig. to \$ 10.00	\$ 6.00	9:30 am-9:00 pm		Orig. to \$ 9.00	\$ 5.00
\$ 10.01 to \$ 17.99	\$ 8.00			\$ 9.01 to \$ 17.99	\$ 8.00
\$ 18.00 up	\$ 12.00	Sunday 11:00 am to 4:00 pm		\$ 18.00 up	\$ 12.00
ALL SPORTS SHOES		ALL SLIPPERS		MEN & WOMEN'S	
Now 40% OFF		NOW 50% OFF		COTTON SHOES	
				50% OFF	
FREE PARKING			LIC.NO 6888		

4. What hours is the sale on Sunday?
 A. 9:00 am-9:30 pm. B. 9:30 am-9:00 pm.
 C. 11:00 am-4:00 pm. D. 4:00 am-11:00 pm.
5. What is the reason for the sale?
 A. The store is going out of business.
 B. People don't like shoes.
 C. The store is just starting business.
 D. The store is selling books.

D

shoot /ʃu:t/n., v. △n. plant a new part that grows on plants or trees △v. (shot, shot/ʃɒt/) to hunt and kill birds and animals with a gun as a sport	ignore /ɪɡ'nɔ:(r)/v. (ignored, ignored) to pay no attention to something ☉ I made a suggestion but they ignored it. ignorance /'ɪgnərəns/ n. ignorant /'ɪgnərənt/ adj.
valuable /'væljuəbl/ adj. very useful or important ☉ He is a valuable partner. value /'vælju:/ n., v.	resource /rɪ'sɔ:s/n. (C, usually pl.) something that a country, an organization or a person has and can use ☉ America is rich in natural resources.

1. Which of the following words is the first in alphabetical order in a dictionary?
 A. Shoot. B. Ignore. C. Valuable. D. Resource.
2. The pronunciation of the word "resource" is _____.
 A. /rɪ'sɔ:s/ B. /ʃu:t/ C. /'ɪgnərəns/ D. /'væljuəbl/
3. What is the past form of the word "shoot"?
 A. shooted B. shot C. shoot D. shooting
4. Which sentence is wrong after learning these words in the dictionary?
 A. Canada is rich in water resource.
 B. This is a valuable decision.
 C. He ignorance the doctor's advice.
 D. He used to shoot wild animals.
5. We cannot know about _____ of a word in the dictionary.
 A. phonetics B. the meaning of Chinese
 C. the part of speech D. spelling

E

Greta and her family like to go skiing. Their favorite place to ski is Big Mountain Ski Resort Centre. This year, Greta took her friend Carmen to go skiing. Carmen had never skied before, so she didn't have her own ski equipment. Greta took Carmen to the Big Mountain Ski Shop. There, Carmen rented all the things that she needed for skiing.

BIG MOUNTAIN SKI SHOP		
Skis		
	Full Day-8 hours	Half Day-4 hours
Skis	\$ 15	\$ 10
Boots	\$ 20	\$ 15
Poles	\$ 10	\$ 5

Snowboard	
	Full Day only
Board	\$ 25
Boots	\$ 20

Ski and Snowboard Lessons

Beginner (group lesson) \$ 10 per hour

Advanced (private lesson) \$ 20 per hour

Welcome to Big Mountain Ski Resort Centre! Have a good time!

1. If she rented only boots and skis for a full day, Carmen would pay _____.
 A. \$ 45 B. \$ 20 C. \$ 35 D. \$ 55
2. The underlined word **equipment** means _____.
 A. 器材 B. 教练 C. 服装 D. 摄影
3. Can Carmen rent the snowboard only for 4 hours?
 A. Yes, she can. B. No, she can't. C. Maybe. D. It isn't mentioned.
4. If Carmen have Ski and Snowboard lessons for two hours, she need to pay _____.
 A. \$ 10 B. \$ 20 C. \$ 30 D. \$ 40
5. Carmen may see the table(表格) above _____.
 A. on TV B. on the wall of the shop
 C. in the newspaper D. on the Internet

F

Trip 1 One Week in the Mountains

Bring your strong shoes and warm clothes for this walk in a beautiful area of the Green Mountains. You may go hiking or have a try of rock climbing. This is also a protection area for wild animals. You can find many kinds of animals living in this area.

Time: May 8-May 14

Tel: 64639818

Adult: \$ 110.00

Child: \$ 55.00

Trip 2 Three Days in the Country

There are many beautiful gardens. Take your camera and enjoy the wonderful sight in Hunter Valley. It is a good place for fishing and horse riding. You can also find different kinds of flowers here. This is also a great walk for bird-lovers.

Time: May 20-May 22

Tel: 63986432

Adult: \$ 55.00

Child: \$ 25.00

Trip 3 Flashlight Adventure

Put on your warm clothes, bring a flashlight(手电筒) and come for a night walk along the Dungog Valley. It is a trip full of adventure(冒险). A guide will lead the tour. Many of the plants you will see on this trip can only be seen at night.

Time: May 16-May 18

Tel: 63875629

Adult: \$ 30.00

Not for children

Trip 4 Five Days by the Sea

Wear your sun hat and enjoy wonderful sunshine all the time from morning to evening. Our hotel is next to the sea. We have our own boats too. You can swim in the sea or in the swimming pool. Every day our boat will take you to different places for swimming.

Time: May 23-May 27

Tel: 67538293

Adult: \$ 80.00

Child: \$ 40.00

1. What number may you call if you and your friends want to enjoy the sunshine at the seaside?

A. 67538293. B. 63986432. C. 64639818. D. 63875629.

2. Sam wants to stay in Hunter Valley with his wife, his five-year-old daughter and his seven-year-old son. How much will it cost?

A. \$ 25. B. \$ 50. C. \$ 100. D. \$ 160.

3. David loves sports. He will take his holiday from May 7 to May 15. What activity will

he probably take part in?

- A. Hiking in the mountains. C. Watching plants at night.
B. Fishing in the country. D. Swimming in the sea.

4. Lucy is a college student. She is quite interested in science. She wants to know something about the life of plants at night. Which trip will she choose?

- A. Trip 1. B. Trip 2. C. Trip 3. D. Trip 4.

5. Which of the following is NOT mentioned according to the four advertisements?

- A. Sun hat. B. Warm clothes. C. Umbrella. D. Camera.

G

Sydney Tower

Address: 100 Market Street, Sydney

Phone: 02 9333 9222

Fax: 02 9333 9203

Open time: 9:00 am to 10:30 pm (Saturdays to 11:30 pm)

Ticket: \$ 60 (for an adult)

\$ 30 (for a child)

Website: www.sydneytower.com.au

How to get there: train to Town Hall Station and a short walk along Market Street

How to book tickets: by phone/fax or through the web

Attraction: Sydney's best views are just the beginning! Sydney Tower takes you to the highest point above Sydney for exciting 360° views of our beautiful city.

1. Sydney Tower is _____ in Sydney, Australia.

- A. the busiest street B. the biggest station
C. the most beautiful park D. the highest point

2. If you want to book a ticket to Sydney Tower, you can't _____.

- A. email sydneytower@hotmail.com
B. fax 02 9333 9203
C. search www.sydneytower.com.au
D. dial 02 9333 9222

3. Frank wants to go to Sydney Tower with his two children, he will pay_____.

- A. \$ 60 B. \$ 90
C. \$ 120 D. \$ 150

4. Last Saturday, Johnson went to visit Sydney Tower. He had to get down the tower

_____.

- A. after 11:30 pm
B. before 11:30 pm
C. at 10:30 pm
D. by 10:30 pm
5. The passage above is probably _____.
A. a piece of news
B. a conversation
C. a story
D. an advertisement

H

<p>THE TAJ 100 years of pictures THEN AND NOW See the Taj in history from 1900 to 2000 Photography Show City Art Museum 720 High Street Tuesday to Sunday 10 am to 5 pm</p>	<p>AFRICAN SAFARI PARK A Drive-through Zoo Drive in your own car or take the special train See lions, elephants, tigers without cages Open every day 9:00-16:00 Special tickets \$ 35 for 4 people</p>
<p>BELL TOWER TRIPS Great scenery from the top! Climb 439 steps or take the lift Learn the 300-year history of our city Sundays only 8 am to 3 pm No children under 5</p>	<p>HARRY POTTER MAGIC SHOW See magic performances • The quiet bell • The clever boy • The terrible message Two full hours Saturday morning Starts at 9:30 The Grand Cinema 741 High Street</p>

1. We can go to see the Taj pictures at _____ on Sunday.
A. 3 pm
B. 8 am
C. 6 pm
D. 7 am
2. If eight students go to see animals in the zoo on Sunday, they should pay _____.
A. \$ 105
B. \$ 140
C. \$ 35
D. \$ 70
3. Children under _____ are not allowed to go to Bell Tower.
A. 5
B. 6
C. 7
D. 8
4. If Sam wants to see magic performances, he may go to _____ to enjoy them.
A. City Art Museum
B. the Grand Cinema
C. African Safari Park
D. Bell Tower
5. Which of the following is true according to the passage?
A. On Saturday morning the magic performance Harry Potter may end at 11:30.

- B. You can only take the lift to the top of Bell Tower.
 C. You can see the lions in cages in African Safari Park.
 D. On Monday you can see the Taj in history in City Art Museum.

I

An Inviting Advertisement of Summer School

We are a bilingual(双语的) school for children of 6-14. We want a cook, a library assistant, a sports coach and a language teacher.

Job	Age	Language	Skill	Other terms
cook	25-40	Chinese	can cook Chinese and Western food	healthy
library assistant	20-35	Chinese, English	has the knowledge on different kinds of books	careful
sports coach	20-40	Chinese, English	major in physical education	healthy, strong
teacher	...	Chinese, English	major in English	

- Who can't go to Summer School?
 A. A four-year-old child.
 B. An eleven-year-old boy.
 C. A fourteen-year-old girl.
 D. An eight-year-old boy.
- Who is not wanted by Summer School?
 A. A cook.
 B. A headmaster.
 C. A library assistant.
 D. A language teacher.
- Who may not speak English?
 A. The language teacher.
 B. The library assistant.
 C. The cook.
 D. The sports coach.
- The coach must major in _____.
 A. Chinese
 B. English
 C. physical education
 D. food
- What is needed as a teacher?
 A. Age between 25 and 40.
 B. He can cook western food.
 C. He should be able to speak Chinese and English.
 D. He should be strong and healthy.

J

April Hot SALE @Nobel Book Store!

To celebrate our 30th birthday, we are having a big sale!

<i>Children's books</i>	Text book	Picture book	Story book
	25% off	30% off	20% off
20% discount on all adults' books!			

Amazing events in our birthday month:

Time & Place	Event	Speaker
25 April, 4 pm Fanta Centre, 3F	Introduction: The School Diaries	Claire Tay, writer of the book
26 April, 1 pm Retro Mall, 2F	Discussion: How to improve through reading	Michael Hawes, English professor
28 April, 7 pm Winkle Mall, 1F	Lecture: The most popular books of the year	David Koh, director of the book store
29 April, 8 pm Fanta Centre, 3F	Question & Answer: Face to face with a renowned writer	Kate White, winner of many international awards

Spend over \$ 50 and get a chance to win a \$ 10 gift card.

Spend over \$ 100 and get a chance to win prizes, from Nobel membership, e-dictionaries to concert tickets!

- April is the birthday month of _____.
A. Nobel Book Store
B. Fanta Centre
C. Retro Mall
D. Winkle Mall
- You can get the biggest discount on _____.
A. adult's story books
B. all magazines
C. children's picture books
D. all textbooks
- _____ will help you know more about the most popular books this year.
A. Claire Tay
B. Michael Hawes
C. David Koh
D. Kate White
- If you spend \$ 65, you will get a chance to win _____.
A. an e-dictionary
B. a \$ 10 gift card
C. Nobel membership
D. a concert gift
- The main purpose of the advisement is to _____.
A. find excellent writers
B. attract more book buyers
C. celebrate Children's Day
D. introduce new reading courses

K



Tennis Club: Learn the basic rules of tennis. Have fun and get some exercise. Join the club today!

Tuesdays 3:30-4:30



Drama Club: Perform alone or in groups. Sing, dance, or play an instrument(乐器).

Mondays and Fridays 3:30-4:30



Chess Club: Chess games for all levels. Have fun and make new friends. Open to students in grades 10-12.

Mondays 3:30-4:30



Computer Club: Learn new programs.

Beginners are welcome.

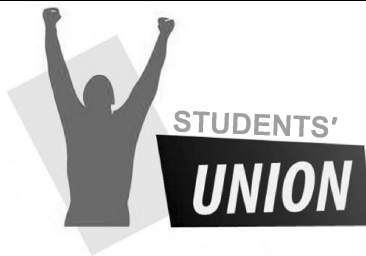
Tuesdays 3:30-4:30



Student Magazine Club: Work with other students on the school magazines.

Talk about stories and poems for the magazine.

Wednesdays 3:30-4:30



Students' Union: Become a member of the students' Union. Share ideas about school life and plan school activities.

Thursdays 3:30-4:30

1. If Tom is interested in stories and poems, he can join _____.
A. Chess Club
B. Computer Club
C. Student Magazine Club
D. Students' Union
2. As a member of Students' Union, you can _____.
A. have fun and get some exercise
B. perform alone or in groups
C. share ideas about school life and plan school activities
D. work with other students on the school magazines

3. If Lily is free on Tuesday, she can join _____.
 A. Drama Club or Students' Union
 B. Student Magazine Club or Computer Club
 C. Chess Club or Students' Union
 D. Tennis Club or Computer Club
4. How many clubs mentioned music in the form?
 A. 1. B. 2. C. 5. D. 6.
5. Which of the following is NOT TRUE according to the text?
 A. You can learn the basic rules of tennis in the Tennis Club.
 B. Chess Club opens to students in all grades.
 C. You can go to the Drama Club twice a week.
 D. Beginners are welcome to Computer Club.

L

Pizza House Come and enjoy your meal!	
Food	Beef and tomato pizza \$ 9.00 Chicken and onion pizza \$ 8.00 Ham and cabbage pizza \$ 7.00 Fruit pizza \$ 5.00
Drink	Red tea \$ 2.00 Coffee \$ 3.00 Fruit juice \$ 2.00
Dessert	Ice-cream \$ 3.00 Cake \$ 2.00
Soup	Vegetable soup free
Address: 76 Main Street Tel: 867-8666	

1. Which pizza is the cheapest among them?
 A. Beef and tomato pizza B. Chicken and onion pizza
 C. Ham and cabbage pizza D. Fruit pizza
2. We can buy some drinks EXCEPT _____.
 A. milk B. juice C. tea D. coffee
3. Mary wants to buy a chicken and onion pizza, two cups of coffee and two cakes. She needs to pay _____.
 A. \$ 13.00 B. \$ 15.00 C. \$ 18.00 D. \$ 20.00

4. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
- A. There aren't any drinks in Pizza House.
 B. There are five kinds of pizzas in Pizza House.
 C. We can't know the telephone number of Pizza House.
 D. You don't need to pay any money for the vegetable soup.
5. The passage is _____.
 A. a film B. a menu C. a map D. a speech

M

Choosing which university to go to is one of the biggest and most expensive decisions you'll have to make. Here are some things to consider.

- Work out whether you want to study at home or abroad. If you're going abroad, first you have to think of the cost of your study, living expenses and the flight tickets.
- Decide which courses interest you and find out more about who will teach the course. Try to collect information from past students.
- Check out the ability of the teachers. Study the key subjects in the course and compare them with the ones from other universities.
- Find out if the university offers work for practice or exchange programs for the course you're interested in.
- Check what the university's policy(政策) is for switching(转换) courses in the university or changing universities.
- Many universities now have websites. Use them as a chance to ask the universities all the questions you want.
- Visit education exhibitions. You'll be able to find out more by talking to teachers from different universities, and they can be found easily at the same time.
- Go to see the university if you can. If this is not possible because of the cost, do some research and find out where the university is as well as the environment around it. It shouldn't be too hard to do that with programs like Google Maps.

1. How many suggestions are mentioned in the passage?
 A. Six. B. Seven. C. Eight. D. Nine.
2. According to the passage, if you're going to study abroad, what should you do first?
 A. Think of the cost. B. Find out a university.
 C. Choose the course. D. Check the teachers' ability.
3. Which is the easiest way to get to know different universities?
 A. Check the website. B. Visit education exhibitions.
 C. Use Google Maps. D. Go to see the universities.
4. The passage is written for _____.
 A. primary school students B. high school students

- C. people out of jobs D. people looking for jobs
5. What does the passage mainly talk about?
- A. Qualities of a good university.
B. Ways to achieve your goals.
C. Advice on choosing a university.
D. Factors influencing your choice.

N

In England a woman fell down a stair. Panic(惊慌) followed—178 persons lost their lives. In Michigan a woman fell ill. There was a call for water. Someone thought it meant fire—71 were killed. In Oklahoma an old man's hair caught fire—36 died.

What should you do to be out of danger?

- As you sit in any crowd, pick out an exit which is not the one where most persons enter and plan to use if necessary.
 - If a rush starts, do not get into it. Stay still. Let it pass. Then go to the exit you have chosen.
 - Do not cry out. Speak quietly. Act calmly.
 - Do not stop for your hat and coat unless they are at hand.
 - If there is smoke, crouch. The best air is about three feet above the floor.
 - When you are outside the building, stay out. Many dead would be alive if they had not returned for something.
 - When you get out, move far from the door so others can get out.
1. The first paragraph tells us that over two hundred people lost their lives because of _____.
A. a fire B. a call for water C. falling downstairs D. panic
2. If you are in a crowd when panic starts, you should _____.
A. run with the others B. call for help as loudly as you can
C. hurry to an exit D. stay still until the crowd has passed
3. If there is smoke, you should _____.
A. stay still B. cry out C. crouch D. speak quietly
4. Once out of a place where there is panic, you should _____.
A. stay outside B. go back for your wallet
C. return to ask people not to run D. stand near the exit
5. When you are safe outside a burning building, stay away from the door so that _____.
A. the smoke can get out B. you will not get burned
C. others may leave D. others may enter

O

China is a large country with profound culture.

Beijing opera

With a history of about 200 years, Beijing opera is a perfect combination of music, performance, mime and dance, which is favored by people domestic and abroad. Beijing opera is originated in Beijing around 1840. Now Beijing opera has become one of the largest influential opera form in the world.

Chinese Kung Fu

Chinese Kung Fu, also known as Wushu, is a traditional sport item in ancient China, which is a perfect combination of exercise, self-defense and has become a great component of Chinese culture.

Chinese Tea Culture

Chinese tea culture is the culture of making tea and drinking tea in China, which is different from that of Europe, Britain and Japan. China is home to many kinds of tea, from Green Tea, Black Tea, to White Tea and Yellow Tea. In China, drinking tea is usually referred as tasting tea, which not only means distinguishing the quality of tea, but also enjoying the life.

- Which is not mentioned in the passage?
A. Beijing Opera. B. Chinese Wushu.
C. Chinese tea. D. The Great Wall.
- _____ is not included in Beijing Opera.
A. Music B. Performance C. Dance D. Action
- Chinese tea includes _____ according to the passage.
A. Green Tea, White Tea, Black Tea and Yellow Tea
B. Green Tea, Black Tea, Blue Tea and Yellow Tea
C. Green Tea, Black Tea, White Tea and Red Tea
D. Green Tea, Red Tea, colorful Tea and Yellow Tea
- From the passage, we can know _____.
A. Chinese tea culture is the same as that in Britain
B. people who have Chinese Kung Fu can keep healthy and protect themselves
C. Beijing Opera started about 1840 years ago
D. Chinese tea culture is only drinking tea
- Which is the proper title for the passage?
A. Chinese Tea Culture B. Chinese Opera
C. Chinese Culture D. A large Country

P

Want to stay away from colds? Put on a happy face. Compared with unhappy people, those who are cheerful and relaxed are less likely to suffer from colds, according to a new

study. It's possible that being happy helps the body fight illnesses, say the researchers from New York University.

"It seems that positive feelings may reduce the danger of illness," said the study's chief researcher Sheldon Cohen. In an earlier study, Cohen found that people who were cheerful and lively caught coughs and colds less often. People who showed positive feelings were also less likely to tell their doctors that they fell ill.

In this study, Cohen's interviewed 193 adults every day for two weeks. During the interviews, the people told researchers about the happy or the sad feelings they had that day. After the two weeks, the people were given colds by doctors and had to stay alone in a room for six days.

The results showed that everyone in the study was equally likely to get ill. But for people who said they felt happy during the research period, their illnesses were less serious and lasted for a shorter time.

Cohen believes that when people experience positive feelings, their body may produce a chemical that helps fight illness and disease. So if you are worried about your health, look on the bright side more often.

1. Which of the following was NOT a part of the study?
 - A. People talked about their feelings every day.
 - B. People were kept alone for six days.
 - C. People were given colds by doctors.
 - D. People were made to feel unhappy.
2. What did the study find?
 - A. People who felt happy never got ill.
 - B. People's feelings didn't influence their health.
 - C. People with good feelings became ill more easily.
 - D. People with positive feelings had less serious illnesses.
3. According to Cohen, which of the following may help fight illness?
 - A. Eating.
 - B. Crying.
 - C. Laughing.
 - D. Sleeping.
4. This passage is a(n) _____.
 - A. advertisement
 - B. newspaper report
 - C. story
 - D. scientist's diary
5. What is the best title for this passage?
 - A. Smiles can fight colds
 - B. Cause of colds found
 - C. The danger of colds
 - D. How people get sick

Q

Our village carpenter(木匠), John, came one day and made a dining table for my wife. He made it just the right size for the space between the two windows. When I got home that evening, John was drinking a cup of tea and writing out his bill for the job.

My wife said to me quietly, "That's his ninth cup of tea today." But she said, in a loud voice, "It's a beautiful table, dear, isn't it? "

"I'll decide about that when I see the bill," I said.

John laughed and gave me his bill for the work. I read:

<i>One dining table</i>	<i>10 November, 1998</i>
<i>Cost of wood</i>	<i>\$ 17.00</i>
<i>Paint</i>	<i>\$ 1.50</i>
<i>Work, 8 hours (\$ 1 an hour)</i>	<i>\$ 8.00</i>
<i>Total</i>	<i>\$ 36.50</i>

When I was looking at the bill, John said, "It's been a nice day, hasn't it? Quite sunny."

"Yes," I said. "I'm glad it's only the tenth of November."

"Me, too," said John. "You wait — it'll be a lot colder by the end of the month."

"Yes, colder — and more expensive! A dining table will be \$ 20 more expensive on November 30, won't it, John?"

John looked hard at me for half a minute. Was there a little smile in his two blue eyes? I gave his bill back to him.

"If there isn't too much trouble, John," I said, "please add it up again. You can forget the date..."

I paid him \$ 26.50 and he was happy to get it.

- Why did John talk about the weather when the writer was looking at the bill?
 - Because he didn't want the writer to go through the bill carefully.
 - Because it was really a fine day.
 - Because he wanted the writer to check the bill carefully.
 - Because he wanted to tell the writer what the weather was like.
- The writer thought John would ask for _____ if he made a dining table on the last day of November.
 - \$ 20.00
 - \$ 46.50
 - \$ 56.50
 - \$ 26.50
- When the writer gave John the money, John was happy because _____.
 - he got what he should get for his work
 - he got much more money for his work
 - he got the money easily
 - he didn't have to add up the costs again
- From the story we know that _____.

- A. John made a mistake in the bill
 - B. John tried to fool the writer in order to get more money for his work
 - C. John had written out the bill before the writer got home
 - D. John still wanted to get \$ 36.50 for his work in the end
5. What do you think of the writer?
- A. He is honest.
 - B. He is clever.
 - C. He is foolish.
 - D. He is afraid.

R

You may know about “junk food” like French fries. But do you know about “junk sleep”? Recently, a British survey found that electronic(电子) products in teenagers bedrooms are affecting(影响) their sleep.

The survey was done among 1,000 British kids from 12 to 16. It found that thirty percent of them got just 4 to 7 hours sleep every day. But doctors say they need 8 to 9 hours.

Almost a quarter of the kids said they fell asleep more than once a week while watching TV, listening to music or using other electronic products.

“This is very worrying,” said Dr. Chris Idzkowski, a British expert, “We call it ‘junk sleep’. It means you don’t get enough sleep and the quality of the sleep is bad, too. If you don’t get good rest, you don’t perform well in school the next day.”

The survey found that 40 percent of the kids felt tired each day, with girls between 13 and 16 feeling the worst. Nearly all the teenagers have a phone, MP4 or TV in their bedroom. And many of them have all three.

1. This passage is mainly about _____.
 - A. junk food
 - B. junk sleep
 - C. electronic products
 - D. the importance of sleep
2. _____ of the children in the survey sleep only 4 to 7 hours a day.
 - A. 200
 - B. 300
 - C. 500
 - D. 1,000
3. “Junk food” and “junk sleep” are similar to each other in the way that _____.
 - A. they are both low in quality
 - B. they are both produced in factories
 - C. people enjoy both in their spare time
 - D. they are both good to people’s health
4. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. Teenagers need 4 to 7 hours of sleep each day.
 - B. Few of the teenagers have a phone in their bedrooms.
 - C. Teenagers spend too much time on electronic products.
 - D. Girls between 15 and 16 spend the least time on electronic products.
5. Which of the following is the best solution to the problem?
 - A. Parents watch TV together with their children.
 - B. Forbid teenagers to use any electronic product.
 - C. Teenagers limit their use of the electronic products.
 - D. The use of mobile phone and MP4 is not allowed at school.

S

Height is just one of the features your genes(基因) decide. In fact, because you have two parents, your genes provide you a height that usually lands somewhere between the height of each parent. If both your parents are tall, then most probably you will be tall, too. But if you have questions about how tall you're going to be, ask your doctor if he or she can help you find them out.

But genes don't decide everything. For example, eating an unhealthy diet can keep you from growing to your full potential(潜力). Getting plenty of sleep and enough exercise will help you grow to the expected height.

It's natural that you're wondering how fast you should grow. There's no perfect or right answer. Generally speaking, kids grow about 6 cm a year between age 3 and the time when they start puberty.

Your doctor will know how your growth has been going over the years. 2 cm here and 3 cm there make a little difference to the height you're at now. How have you been growing up to this height? What other changes may your body be going through?

Don't be amazed if you seem to have grown a lot in a very short time. Everyone has a growth spurt(激增, 迸发) during puberty. The age for starting puberty is about 10 for girls and about 11 for boys. But it can be earlier or later — between 7 and 13 for girls and 9 and 15 for boys.

You'll usually begin to notice that you're growing faster about a year after your body starts to show the first changes of puberty.

1. If you want to know how tall you should grow, _____.
 - A. you should have enough exercise
 - B. you can ask doctors for help
 - C. you should take some special medicine
 - D. you can record your growth during puberty
2. The Chinese for the word "puberty" is _____.
 - A. 童年时期
 - B. 婴幼儿时期
 - C. 习惯养成期
 - D. 青春期
3. After reading this passage, we can explain _____.
 - A. how good it is to be a doctor
 - B. how much sleep time we need
 - C. why genes can't decide everything
 - D. what healthy diet is
4. Which is NOT mentioned in the passage?
 - A. Your height most probably depends on how tall your parents are.
 - B. Girls' age for starting puberty is usually earlier than that for boys'.
 - C. The features showing the first changes of puberty between boys and girls are different.

- D. You may be amazed sometimes when you grow too fast.
5. This passage is mainly about _____.
 A. how the genes work in your body
 B. how your parents' height influence you
 C. how you look like your parents
 D. how you grow to a certain height

T

A cold is a kind of infection(传染病). People may have a headache, runny nose, cough, sore throat and so on. They may feel tired, unwell and so on. The following steps will help make a cold less uncomfortable.

Drink plenty of water. You can also drink honey and lemon tea.

Eat chicken soup. It helps you get over your cold more quickly.

Sleep. It is really the only way to fight off a cold.

Avoid smoking. You should also avoid coffee, caffeinated tea and soda.

Don't clean, do work, exercise. Resting helps you get better faster.

Staying home. It can also prevent you from infecting other people with a cold.

If you still aren't feeling well in a week, consider seeing a doctor. You may have something worse than a cold.

1. Which is not the symptom(症状) of a cold?

A. Runny nose. B. Sore throat. C. Toothache. D. Cough.

2. What to drink when you have a cold?

A. Soda. B. Coffee. C. Caffeinated tea. D. Lemon tea.

3. When you have got a cold, you'd better _____.

A. not stay in your house B. stay with other people
 C. not go out D. do some exercise

4. _____ is helpful if you're not feeling well.

A. To get some rest B. To work late
 C. To do some cleaning D. To play sports for 3 hours

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

A. A cold is a kind of infection.
 B. Sleep is really the only way to fight off a cold.
 C. What can you do to stop colds from spreading?
 D. How to make a cold less uncomfortable.

三、短文填空

应试技巧

短文填空的测试主要考查学生单词拼写、语言基础知识、语篇理解能力和语言表达能力。考生要做到以下几方面：

(1) 通读全文，弄清短文大意。

应该先越过空格，通读全文，通过我们掌握的基本知识和逻辑思维，了解文章的大意，理清文章的脉络，同时还要注意某些与空格有关的关键信息。

(2) 复读短文，运用以下技巧，前后照应，确定答案。

① 根据句子的语法结构判断所填词是什么词类；

② 根据上下文意思判断应该填写的单词；

③ 根据上下文判断所填写单词的形式（名词涉及单复数，动词涉及时态、语态、非谓语动词等，形容词和副词涉及比较级等，数词涉及基数词和序数词等）；

④ 要注意某些固定搭配和结构。

(3) 复读检验，消除疏漏。

答案基本确定后，我们还要再次阅读全文，认真检查是否存在疏漏，意义是否连贯，语法是否正确，是否符合逻辑，是否存在拼写错误等。

案例分析

阅读短文，根据短文内容和提示在空白处填入适当的内容。（每空一词）

Most people want to be happy, but few know how to find happiness. Money and 1. _____ (成功) alone don't bring happiness. Happiness depends on 2. _____ (we). Here 3. _____ (be) a few secrets to help you be happier.

The first secret of happiness is to enjoy the simple things in life, such 4. _____ spending time with close friends, listening to your 5. f_____ music, or reading a good book. People 6. _____ have close friends often enjoy happier and 7. _____ (healthy) lives.

Another 8. _____ of happiness is to be active and have hobbies. We can collect stamps, go fishing or play a sport.

Finally, many people find happiness in 9. _____ (help) others. 10. _____ you want to feel happier, do something nice for someone.

文章大意：本文主要介绍如何寻找幸福。

1. success 考查词汇的拼写，根据汉语提示及上下文可知此处应用“成功”的名词形式，所以答案为 success。

2. ourselves 考查代词, “幸福取决于我们自己”, 应该用 we 的反身代词形式, 所以答案为 ourselves。

3. are 考查主谓一致, 分析句子结构可知本句的主语为 “a few secrets”, 所以答案为 are。

4. as 考查固定短语 such as, 所以答案为 as。

5. favorite/favourite 考查单词的拼写, 根据上下文可知此处意思是 “最喜爱的”, 又根据所给首字母 f 判断, 此处答案为 favorite/favourite。

6. who/that 考查定语从句, 分析句子结构可知此处应该填写定语从句的关系代词, 且先行词为 people, 所以答案为 who/that。

7. healthier 考查形容词的比较等级, 根据上下文的 happier and _____ lives 可知此处应该填写所给单词 “healthy” 的比较级, 所以答案为 healthier。

8. secret 考查上下文语境, 根据第二段中的 “The first secret of happiness...” 可知此处答案为 secret。

9. helping 考查非谓语动词, 介词的后面用 V-ing 形式作宾语, 所以答案为 helping。

10. If 考查状语从句, 分析句子结构可知第一句为 if 引导的条件状语从句, if 位于句首, 所以答案为 If。



专项训练

A

At present, there are more than one hundred million people suffering from starvation(饥饿). As a 1. _____ (成员) of this big family in China, do we have the reason to waste? No! So 2. _____ should we do to reduce the unnecessary food wastage on the dining table?

Betty, a waitress in a restaurant, finds food wastage is very common in 3. _____ (she) restaurant. Compared with 4. _____ (woman), men and younger 5. _____ (customer) pay more attention 6. _____ their “face”. They often order 7. _____ (much) food than necessary, and they often drink more. The more they drink, the more wastage there will be because they ignore the food. This results in greater 8. _____ wastage. Betty sometimes has to 9. _____ (提醒) her customers that they have ordered too much. But gradually, more and more people begin to realize the 10. _____ (important) of saving.

B

Space vegetables are grown from seeds that have been taken to space. When they are brought back to the earth, these seeds produce vegetables 1. _____ are 2. _____ (big) and healthier than normal vegetables. Space vegetables are tested to

make sure that they will 3. _____ (are) safe to eat. But some people still worry about 4. _____ (have) space vegetables. They think 5. _____ space vegetables might not be good 6. _____ us and could make us 7. _____ (get) sick because of the radiation(辐射) in 8. _____. However, people should not be afraid because no new genes have been 9. _____ (put) into them. So there is no 10. _____ (风险) of eating them.

C

I interviewed 19-year-old Asian pop star Candy Wang. Candy told me that she 1. _____ (use) to be really shy. But now she enjoys 2. _____ (sing) in front of crowds. She explained how life was different after she became 3. _____ (著名的). However, too 4. _____ (many) attention can also be a bad thing. "I always have to worry about how I appear to others. And I have much 5. _____ (little) private time now 6. _____ there are always guards around 7. _____ (I)," she said 8. _____ (slow). "You have to prepare to give 9. _____ your normal life. You can never imagine how difficult the road to 10. _____ (成功) is."

D

Last Sunday my father and I went fishing by bike. We got up very early that day. When we 1. _____ (leave) home, the moon could still be 2. _____ (see) in the sky. The morning air was 3. _____ (凉爽的) and I felt wind on my face. This made us very 4. _____ (comfort). We laughed and talked all the way while we were riding our 5. _____. By about six we were already sitting by the river. 6. _____ (fish) is not easy. If you want to be 7. _____ (success), you must be very careful. That day we had another good catch. We caught a lot of fish and enjoyed 8. _____ (we) very much. It was late when we 9. a _____ home. We felt a little tired 10. _____ happy. It is a very good sport. I like it very much.

E

Dragon Boat Festival was a 1. _____ (传统的) Chinese festival. It is in memory of Qu Yuan, one of the 2. _____ (great) Chinese poets. He killed 3. _____ (he) by jumping into the Miluo River on May 5th of the lunar calendar(阴历), 278 BC. People there rowed the boats to 4. _____ (save) him. But it was too late. Then they 5. _____ (throw) rice into the river to 6. f _____ the fishes so that they would stay away from his body. 7. _____ then on, every year on this day, people enjoy 8. _____ (eat) Zongzi 9. _____ is made of rice with meat, eggs and so on. Have you ever seen the dragon boat race on TV? Several teams row their dragon-shaped boats as 10. _____ (quick) as they can. It is another important part of this festival.

F

Climbing a mountain is hard work. But one step after another finally brings a person to the top. Along the way, he can 1. _____ (stop) and look around. And the 2. _____ (high) he climbs, the more wonderful his view is. Now 3. _____ (learn) another language is something like climbing a 4. _____. It can open the way into 5. _____ (people) minds and hearts, into a culture very different from the one of 6. _____ (you) own. Like the mountain climber 7. _____ stops now and then to enjoy the 8. _____ (景色, 景点) around him, everyone who is interested 9. _____ reading will find 10. _____ (please) in books as he fights on learning more and more of that new language.

G

This was Allan's 1. _____ (one) time to go traveling by air. He felt 2. _____ (excite) but he didn't know how he could 3. _____ (find) his seat, so he asked the air hostess, "Could you 4. _____ (helpful) me? I can't find my seat." The air hostess showed him the 5. _____ and told him to sit down and fasten the seat belt. She told Allan not to move about when the flight was going up. And she also said 6. _____ Allan's ears might 7. f_____ a little strange, but he didn't need to worry about it because many people felt like that. When the plane was flying very high, Allan could stand 8. _____ and walk around. He could either read books (9) _____ see films. Allan would enjoy the 10. _____ (航行, 航班) and arrive home soon.

H

In the days before electricity, people didn't worry much about sleep. They usually went to bed a couple of hours after sunset and 1. _____ (wake) at sunrise. After all, there wasn't much to do in those days after the sun went down. But then came the electric light bulb. And now we have satellite television, the 2. _____ (互联网), 24-hour convenience stores and longer hours at work. How much can we sleep? How much should we sleep?

Like it or not, many of us are sleeping less on average(平均). In 1910, most Americans 3. _____ (sleep) nine hours a night. That dropped to 7.5 hours by 1975. In 2002, a study by the 4. _____ (Nation) Sleep Foundation found that the average Americans got only 6.9 hours. The news is even 5. _____ (bad) for people 6. _____ work the night shift. They sleep an average of just five hours.

Are we sleeping enough? Norman Stanley, a British 7. _____ (science) who studies sleep, believes people's sleep needs vary. Some people need as many as 11 hours, but others 8. _____ (need) as 9. _____ (few) as three. How much do you really need? He says, "Simply sleep until you wake naturally, without the help 10. _____ an

alarm clock. That's your sleep need."

I

Every Monday afternoon, Shi, a 1. _____ (职业的) school student, has an 2. _____ (appoint) with ten old people, aged from 40 to 70. As a volunteer, she 3. _____ (choose) to teach these elderly people English for free in her community. She could practice her English while teaching others. And it turned out that she benefited from her job 4. _____ (much) than expected. "They taught me how to 5. c _____ with others. With those old people you must always be polite and 6. _____ (patience). They are very 7. _____ (friend) to me," Shi said. She said the job gave 8. _____ a sense of achievement as a 9. _____ (成员) of society, especially when three grannies said to her once, "Thank you 10. _____ your hard work!"

J

When you're busy or 1. _____ (有压力的), don't forget your hobbies, such as listening to music, reading and playing ball games. 2. _____ eating makes you feel better, you can go to your favorite 3. r _____ to have a delicious meal. If you are worried about your English and don't know how to 4. _____ (提高, 改善) it, why not watch some English TV programs? If you're feeling bad about your 5. _____ (weigh) and don't know 6. _____ to do, why not go walking or 7. _____ (jog)? Finally, trying to keep your worries to yourself can make them much 8. _____ (bad). I like to share my problems with my friends. They always give me useful 9. s _____. If you don't know who to talk to, you can always write 10. _____ me. You're never alone.

K

Once you put your mind to it, anything is possible. Having made it this far, you have shown an interest in becoming an 1. _____ (工程师). You have already 2. _____ (take) the hardest step. Now you have to develop a game plan and take a few steps to get ahead of the game so that you can be prepared 3. _____ the time comes.

You're probably thinking that you can just put everything off since you have plenty 4. _____ time before college. Wrong. The best time to start is NOW. The skills 5. _____ (require) in engineering may take years to develop or even a lifetime. Doing a little now will save 6. _____ (your) a lot of effort 7. _____ (late).

One of the most 8. _____ (重要的) things for future is to have a direction. Decide what field of engineering you want to work. Then, look for schools 9. _____ offer a program for the 10. _____ you have selected.

L

Be pleased to do anything even though it is very tiny. In fact, there's no single thing that is not 1. _____ (值得的) doing or you are not able to do. So 2. _____ (live) a happy life with a light heart is the most important. Then how can you live a happy life?

Make each day meaningful by helping someone or just making someone smile. The feeling 3. _____ makes you want to help others stays at the bottom of your heart. Happiness depends 4. _____ your feelings in your heart. Helping others is helping 5. _____ (you).

6. _____ (face) difficulties bravely in your life. Everyone may meet with difficulties. No one can 7. _____ (避免) them. The difficulties can teach you a lot. They will help you to be closer to 8. _____ (successful).

Never worry about the things you can't change. Worrying can 9. _____ change the situation nor solve any problem. Perhaps, not every dream will be realized. Never mind, and take it easy.

Come on, everybody! Let's live a happy life with a light 10. _____ and enjoy the beautiful sunshine every day.

M

School trip is an opportunity to learn outside in 1. _____ (interest) ways.

Seeing something in real life can help you learn quickly and 2. _____ (easy). Here are some tips:

A trip to a farm to see some 3.p _____ and animals.

Trips to old buildings as part of your history lessons.

Theater trips to see plays 4. _____ you are studying in lessons.

But school 5. _____ aren't always about study. Some school trips are about sports 6. _____ (活动). If you are a 7.m _____ of a school sports team, you might go on a special trip to compete 8. _____ other school teams. School trips to places like Disney Land can get you to learn new things without even 9. _____ (realize) it!

School trips are a 10. _____ (自然的) way to learn more about the real world.

N

Body language is 1. _____ (use) by people who send messages to one another. It is very useful and 2. _____ (help) because it can help you make yourself easily 3. _____ (understand). When you are talking with others, you are not only just using words, 4. _____ using gestures. Waving one's hand means "Goodbye". Shaking hands means welcome, and clapping hands means 5. _____ (祝贺). 6.N _____ the head means agreement, and shaking the head means disagreement. The gestures are accepted

by both Chinese and foreigners as having the same 7. _____ (mean).

The countries where they have different customs have different body languages. Following the customs will help 8. _____ (your) communicate 9. _____ people and make your staying there much more pleasant and 10. _____ (舒适的).

O

The world needs love and many people need our help. Several years ago my teachers asked me to take part 1. _____ a program that helps the disabled. Each week I 2. _____ (spend) an hour in the classroom helping with schoolwork, art project, games and other activities, 3. _____ (include) eating. However, I found 4. _____ working with children with special needs would change my life forever.

At first I thought it would be nervous to be with the children who are so different, but 5. _____ (gradual) I found there's something special about these students. In a normal classroom it would be common to hear a teacher comfort a child 6. _____ is tapping his pencil, speaking loudly or making unnecessary noises. However, here shouts, cries and other noises are encouraged. They're 7. _____ (sign) of excitement and different ways of communicating.

Working with children with 8. _____ needs has changed my life. It has made me notice others' needs. One of my teachers believes we should be part of something bigger than 9. _____ (we). I believe everyone should get out and do something that makes a 10. _____ (different).

P

Born in the city, I'm used to 1. _____ (live) in the city, even the noises and 2. _____ (pollute). I have never been to the countryside. Nature is a strange word to me. This summer I had a 3. _____ (机会) to visit the countryside.

This is a small village far away cities. The life in the 4. _____ is simple. There are few cars or other 5. _____ (traffic) on the way. The air is 6. _____ (新鲜的). The people are 7. _____ (friend). What's more, here you can 8. _____ (hear) the sound of nature. You can see the children playing with water in the river and the dogs 9. _____ (run) after them. 10. _____ a wonderful picture of countryside!

Q

Dear Peter,

I'm glad to receive your letter asking for my 1. _____ (advice) on how to learn Chinese well. Here are a few 2.s _____. First, 3. _____ is important to take a Chinese course, as you'll 4. _____ (be) able to learn from the teacher and practice with your classmates. Then, it also helps to watch TV and read books, newspapers and

magazines in 5. _____ whenever 6. _____ (impossible). Besides, it should be a good idea to 7. _____ (learn) and sing Chinese songs, because doing so you'll learn and 8. _____ (记住) Chinese words more 9. _____ (easy). You can also make more friends. They can help you learn Chinese. Try and write 10. _____ me in Chinese next time.

R

Zhang Yining was born in Beijing in 1. _____ (10月), 1982. She liked to play table tennis 2. _____ she was very young. She started to play table tennis at the age of six. When she was eleven, she 3. _____ (加入) the National Table Tennis Team. She practiced 4. _____ (play) table tennis in the team and studied at school very 5. _____ (hardly). In 2000, she 6. _____ (赢得) women's singles second place at the 45th World Table Tennis Championships. 7. _____ 2004, she held the champion of women's doubles in Athens Olympics, and carried off the 8. _____ (women) single champion.

Zhang Yining is a table tennis star and has gained great honor for 9. _____ (we) country. We should 10. _____ (learn) from her.

S

People often don't do 1. _____ they really want to do for fear of failure. You don't apply 2. _____ a job in case you don't get it. You don't perform at the school concert because others might laugh 3. _____ you. A lack of 4. _____ (confident) can lead to a lot of suffering. The key to overcoming this problem is to believe in 5. _____ (you). This might be 6. _____ (easy) said than done, but there 7. _____ (be) many ways to help you do this. 8. _____ (talk) about your problem with a friend or look for advice on the 9. _____ (互联网). Keep you calm when you get nervous. And the most important thing is: 10. _____ (相信) you can do it. When you've learned to do that, you are well on your way.

T

At school, we have to get on with teachers, classmates and others. Here 1. _____ some tips on how to get on well with others.

★ 2. _____ (尊重) others. Everybody has 3. _____ (them) own way to do things. So try to understand each other and treat others with respect.

★ Share 4. _____ others. We do not want to be alone in the world. 5. _____ (share) happiness and 6. _____ (sad) with others is a wise way to get on well with others.

★ 7. _____ (help) with each other. In our daily life, 8. _____ someone is

in 9. _____ (麻烦), we can try our best to help him/her. So when we have problems, they will help us as well.

★ Be 10. _____ (friend) to others. If we are friendly to others, people will be friendly to us.

In a word, treat others as you want them to treat you.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

应试技巧

根据情景内容补全对话是依据历年山东省普通高校招生（春季）考试英语考试说明中规定的日常交际用语中的话题，对学生实际运用语言交际的能力进行测试的一种题型，主要考查学生在具体的语言情境中对语言灵活运用能力。

在解答这类题型时，应掌握以下步骤：

- (1) 浏览对话，快速判断语言情境。
- (2) 根据语言情境仔细阅读，运用所提供的信息，填上使会话内容合乎逻辑的单词或句子。注意正确拼写单词，句首单词的第一个字母要大写。
- (3) 开放性交际题，答案不唯一，应依据题干提供的交际情景，填上自己熟悉的一个正确答案即可。
- (4) 检查全文，查缺补漏，检查固定搭配是否恰当，是否符合英语国家的文化习俗及拼写是否正确。

案例分析

A: Good morning, sir.

B: Good morning, sit down, please.

A: Are you Mr. Chen?

B: Yes, Nice to 1. _____ you.

A: 2. _____ and what university did you graduate from?

B: I graduated from Nanjing University in June, 2013.

A: What's your 3. _____ in university?

B: I majored in economic and trade English.

A: Well, we'll 4. _____ in touch with you in a week.

B: 5. _____ you.

A: You are welcome.

分析：设置该题的目的是考查学生是否能够熟练使用问候、面试等交际用语。根据上文可以推断，这是面试时如何相互问候、询问学历、询问所学专业、感谢等用语的考查。

答案：1. meet 2. When 3. major 4. get 5. Thank

要想答好补全对话题，必须牢固掌握日常交际用语，并学会灵活运用。



专项训练

一、补全对话（每空只能填一个单词）

A

A: What do you want to do when you 1. _____ from your school?

B: I'd like to 2. _____ a tour guide.

A: Why?

B: Because my 3. _____ is Tourism.

A: Is this your career goal?

B: Maybe. I prefer such kind of lifestyle.

A: Do you have any 4. _____ to do this job?

B: Yes. I have learned the knowledge about tourism.

A: That's good.

B: What about your career goal?

A: I've no 5. _____. Maybe I should first make clear what type of work can make me happy.

B

A: Hello. Could I speak to David, Please?

B: Speaking! Who's 1. _____?

A: 2. _____ 3. _____ Bruce here. I've got two tickets for the new film. Would you like to go with me?

B: Great! I'd 4. _____ to.

A: Let's meet at seven o'clock, shall we?

B: OK, 5. _____ shall we meet?

A: At the gate of the cinema.

B: OK. Thanks a lot for asking me.

C

A: Hello, Yellow River Service. Can I help you?

B: Yes, I'd like to 1. _____ a taxi.

A: 2. _____ your name, sir?

B: It's Zhou Jiankang.

A: Mr. Zhou. 3. _____ would you like your taxi?

B: Tuesday, June 8th, I'm leaving at 5:30 in the morning.

A: 4. _____ to, sir?

B: To the airport.

A: Where shall we meet you then?

B: 99 Jianguo Street, near White Rose Restaurant.

A: Could you leave your telephone number?

B: Yes, it's 84222335.

A: OK. I've got it. 5. _____ you for calling us.

D

A: Daniel, someone is waiting for you at the gate.

B: 1. _____ is it?

A: I don't know. I forgot to ask for his name.

B: 2. _____ 3. _____ is he?

A: He looks older than you, in his thirties.

B: What does he 4. _____ 5. _____?

A: He is taller than you. He has short curly hair.

B: Does he wear glasses?

A: Yes, he does.

B: He must be my brother.

E

A: 1. _____ your favorite sport?

B: My favorite sport is swimming.

A: 2. _____ 3. _____ do you go swimming?

B: Once a week.

A: 4. _____ do you go swimming with?

B: I usually go swimming with Jim.

A: 5. _____ do you like swimming?

B: I like swimming because it's relaxing.

A: Who swims faster, Jim or you?

B: Jim swims as fast as I.

F

A: Hello, Li Hua. 1. _____ to see you here. Are you working in this supermarket?

B: Yes. I'm a sales manager here. I'm in charge of sales department.

A: Great! I'm 2. _____ to hear that. Congratulations!

B: Thank you. Wang Tao, 3. _____ is your job going?

A: I'm looking for a new job because I really don't like what I am doing now.

B: Now we need a salesperson to sell our new computer. Are you interested in it?

A: But I'm afraid I have no work 4. _____.

B: That doesn't matter. You will be trained for a month before you start to work.

A: Good. I may have a try.

B: OK. Would you like to come and fill out an 5. _____ form?

A: Sure.

G

A: Good morning, sir.

B: Good morning, sit 1. _____, please.

A: Are you Mr. Chen?

B: Yes. Nice to 2. _____ you, sir.

A: When and what university did you 3. _____ from?

B: I graduated from Nanjing University in June, 2012.

A: What's your 4. _____ in university?

B: I majored in economic and trade English.

A: Have you got any experience in advertising?

B: Yes. I have been working in an advertisement company in the last two years.

A: 5. _____ would you be available to start work here?

B: I am available as soon as possible.

A: Well, we'll get in touch with you as soon as possible.

B: Thank you.

H

A: Hello! Where are you from?

B: I'm from America. 1. _____ 2. _____ you?

A: I'm from China.

B: China? It's a beautiful country.

A: Have you ever been to China before?

B: Yes, I have.

A: 3. _____ did you go there?

B: Two years ago.

A: What do you 4. _____ 5. _____ Chinese food?

B: It's delicious.

A: If you go to visit China next time, I'll show you around.

I

A: Hi! Daniel. 1. _____ 2. _____ Jenny.

B: Oh, hi. 3. _____ are things?

A: Just fine. Thanks. Are you doing anything this weekend?

B: Nothing much. Why?

A: A famous art teacher will come to school and give us a talk on how to draw well.
Would you like to come?

B: Sure. 4. _____ will it start?

A: At 2:30 on Saturday afternoon.

B: Where?

A: In the second meeting hall. Don't be late.

B: I won't. 5. _____ you then.

J

A: Good afternoon, madam.

B: Good afternoon, young man. 1. _____ can I do for you?

A: I'm new to the school. I'd like to have a library card.

B: OK. One moment please... I'll get the form ready. Um. Date... May 10th. What's your
2. _____, please?

A: Tom White.

B: OK. T-O-M, Tom. W-H-I-T-E, White.

A: That's right.

B: Are you working or studying here?

A: I'm a student.

B: What class are you in?

A: I'm in Class 6, Grade 1.

B: OK. Your library card number is 2-1-5-8.

A: By the way, can I borrow some books?

B: Of 3. _____. They are on the second floor.

A: 4. _____ a lot.

B: You're 5. _____.

K

A: Good morning. Sit down, please. What kind of job are you 1. _____ for?

B: Thank you. I'm applying for a computer programmer position.

A: What kind of 2. _____ have you had?

B: I 3. _____ from Jinan Vocational School.

A: Do you have any work 4. _____?

B: I've taught computer science in a high school for four years.

A: Great! Do you have a resume with you?

B: Yes. Here you are.

A: OK, we'll read it carefully and probably contact you in three days.

B: 5. _____ for your consideration.

L

A: Good evening and welcome to Sunny Hotel. May I 1. _____ you?

B: Yes. I'm Carl White. I called you last week. I 2. _____ a single room.

A: Just a moment, please. Oh, here. That's Mr. White, a teacher from New York University.

B: That's right.

A: Fine. Could you please help me check the information form?

B: Certainly.

A: OK. Let me see. That's Carl White. C-A-R-L, Carl, W-H-I-T-E, White.

B: That's right.

A: And your home address is No. 7 Center Street, New York.

B: Right.

A: All right. And that's your ID number 6518 NY. Your 3. _____
4. _____ is cwnyu15@sohu.com.

B: Yes, cwnyu. They are the first letters for Carl White New York University.

A: OK. Thank you. Here's the key. Your room number is 814.

B: Thank you.

A: That's all 5. _____.

M

A: Can I 1. _____ you?

B: Yes. I want to buy a dress for my mother.

A: 2. _____ about this one?

B: It looks nice. How 3. _____ is it? It's a traditional Chinese style.

A: ¥ 299. It's 20% off.

B: I'll take it. Here is the money. By the way, can I exchange or return it if my mother doesn't like it?

A: Of 4. _____, but you must do it within a week. Keep your receipt.

B: All right. Thank you.

A: 5. _____ a good day!

N

A: Good morning, Dr. White's office. What can I do for you?

B: Good morning, 1. _____ is John Brown. I'd like to make an 2. _____ with Dr. White. I had a high fever.

A: What's the matter 3. _____ you?

B: I've got a pain in my chest.

A: How long have you been like this?

B: For two days.

A: Well, let me see. How about tomorrow? He will be 4. _____ at 10 o'clock.

B: That's fine. 5. _____ you, I'll come by then.

O

A: Hello, Mr. Li. 1. _____ are you?

B: I'm fine. Thank you. And you?

A: I'm fine, too. Would you 2. _____ to come to our annual meeting?

B: Yes, I'd love to. Thank you. 3. _____ and where?

A: At 6:00 pm on Friday, at Grand Hotel.

B: That's fine. I'll be there on time.

A: I will send an invitation letter to you soon.

B: How nice 4. _____ you! See you later.

A: 5. _____ you.

P

A: Welcome to our restaurant.

B: Are there any tables by the window?

A: Yes. This way, please.

B: Thank 1. _____.

A: Are you ready to 2. _____, now?

B: Are there any 3. _____?

A: Steamed dumplings are very popular.

B: OK. We'll try some.

A: Would you like something to 4. _____?

B: Green tea, please.

(A few minutes later.)

B: Waitress! The dumplings are too salty.

A: I'm 5. _____. I'll look into the matter at once.

二、补全对话（每空填写短语或句子）

A

A: Hello! 1. _____?

B: This is Jack speaking. 2. _____?

A: This is Sam. I called you last night, but there was no reply.

B: I was shopping at that time. I bought something for my trip to Guangzhou.

A: Guangzhou? That's where the 16th Asian Games was held. How lucky you are!

B: So I am. What did you call me for?

A: I'll have a birthday party next Thursday. 3. _____?

B: I'd love to, but 4. _____. My plane will take off next Thursday.

A: What a pity that you can't come! 5. _____!

B: Thank you very much. Bye!

A: Bye!

B

A: Bob, the radio says it is sunny tomorrow. Do you have any plans?

B: Of course. I want to go to the beach. 1. _____?

A: I'm going to do some sports.

B: 2. _____?

A: I like basketball best. I think it can help me grow stronger.

B: 3. _____.

A: I will play it in the gym. By the way, who will you go to the beach with?

B: I'll go with my parents.

A: 4. _____?

B: We will go there by car.

A: Have a good time.

B: 5. _____.

C

A: Good morning, sir. What can I do for you?

B: 1. _____. Do you have any white shirts?

A: Yes. 2. _____?

B: I want Size M.

A: Here you are.

B: 3. _____?

A: Sure. Is it all right?

B: Yes. I like it very much. 4. _____?

A: 296 yuan.

B: That's a bit expensive. Do you have any other kind? I want a cheaper one.

A: What about this one? It is only 108 yuan.

B: OK. 5. _____. Here is the money.

A: Thank you. Goodbye, sir.

D

A: Good morning, Doctor.

B: Good morning, my boy! 1. _____?

A: I've got a headache and a cough. I'm sure there's something wrong with me.

B: How are you feeling now?

A: I'm feeling even worse now.

B: 2. _____. Oh, it's a bit high. I'm afraid you've got a cold.

3. _____?

A: Even since last night. Is it serious, doctor?

B: No. 4. _____. Don't worry about it. Did you eat anything for breakfast this morning?

A: No, I didn't feel like eating anything. What should I do, doctor?

B: Well, Take the medicine three times a day. Stay in bed to have a good rest and drink plenty of water. You'll get well soon.

A: 5. _____, doctor. Goodbye.

B: That's all right. Goodbye.

E

A: Excuse me, I want to go to the museum. 1. _____?

B: Go down this street and turn right at the second crossing. Go up the road to the end, you'll find it.

A: 2. _____?

B: It's about 1,000 metres away.

A: Oh. That's quite a long way.

B: Yes. You'd better take a bus.

A: 3. _____?

B: You can take No. 115 bus. It'll take you there.

A: 4. _____?

B: It takes about fifteen minutes.

A: 5. _____.

B: It's a pleasure.

F

A: Excuse me, sir? Where is the nearest hotel?

B: 1. _____ You may ask that policeman over there.

A: Thank you all the same.

(The man goes to the policeman)

A: Excuse me. 2. _____

C: No, there isn't a hotel near here, but there is one near Bank of China.

A: 3. _____

C: It's about two kilometres away.

A: 4. _____

C: Well, you can take a bus, and there is a bus going there.

A: 5. _____

C: You're welcome.

G

A: Good afternoon, welcome to our restaurant.

B: Thank you.

A: Here is a table for two. 1. _____

B: Thank you. May I have the menu, please?

A: OK. Here it is. 2. _____

B: Sorry, I haven't decided yet. Er...well, I think we would like to have Beijing roast duck and vegetable soup.

A: OK. 3. _____

B: Two cups of orange juice.

A: 4. _____

B: Some rice, please.

A: OK. Thank you for your order.

B: (Forty minutes later) 5. _____

A: Let me see. It's 100 dollars.

B: Here you are.

A: Thank you.

H

A: Good morning, doctor.

B: 1. _____ What's wrong with you?

A: 2. _____

B: Did you have breakfast?

A: No, I didn't feel like eating anything this morning.

B: Have you taken your temperature?

A: Yes, it is 37 °C and it seems to be all right.

B: How long have you been like this?

A: 3. _____

B: I see. Let me examine you.

A: 4. _____, doctor?

B: No, nothing serious. You will be well after a good rest.

A: 5. _____

B: You're welcome.

I

A: Good morning, madam. 1. _____

B: I'd like a T-shirt for my son.

A: 2. _____

B: Size L. He is a tall boy. He loves cotton T-shirts.

A: What about this one? It's made in China.

B: OK. Let me have a look. 3. _____

A: 150 yuan. It's popular now.

B: But I'm afraid it's a little more expensive and I don't like the colour.

A: Do you like the black one? It's only 80 yuan.

B: Hmm, it looks nice. 4. _____ Thank you.

A: 5. _____

J

A: Hi, Sue. It's Mary.

B: Oh, hi. 1. _____

A: Fine. Look, I am wondering if you are free on Saturday evening. I've got two tickets for a concert. Would you like to come?

B: Oh, well, 2. _____. But, em, I am studying for my exams at the moment, and well, I'm sorry I can't.

A: OK. Don't worry. Some other time then, I suppose.

B: Oh, Yeah. Sure. But 3. _____? I think she's free at the weekend.

A: Jenny? Good idea! But could you tell me her telephone number?

B: 4. _____. Just a moment, please. It's 68906133.

A: 68906133. Thank you.

B: You're welcome. And 5. _____

A: The same to you! Bye!

B: Bye!

K

A: 1. _____. Mr. Jones, please have a seat. Thank you for coming in today. I have read your resume. You completed University in England?

B: Yes, I went to Cambridge.

A: So, 2. _____?

B: I have ten years' marketing experience.

A: I can see that from your resume.

B: I was ready for something new. I would like to have a job that is challenging.

A: I see. 3. _____?

B: I would rather work full-time.

A: I'll make a note of that. Now, 4. _____?

B: I am willing to negotiate, but I expect at least \$ 40, 000 a year..

A: Well, that's all for the interview. Thank you for your interest in this job.

B: 5. _____.

五、职场应用

应试技巧

职场应用旨在测试考生在一定的生活和职业场景下应用英语的能力, 包括信息理解与加工能力、按要求完成任务的能力等。考生能准确理解任务要求及信息内容, 能分析、筛选有用信息, 运用学过的英语知识和所掌握的写作技能, 完成相应的任务。其中要求写出短文时, 要表达准确、语法正确、书写规范、卷面整洁, 词数为 80~120。

根据山东省中等职业学校学生的具体特点和历年考试说明的范围, 做这一题型时应注意从以下几个方面入手:

(1) 认真阅读任务, 明确任务要求。职场应用的任务及任务要求是基于学生就业后可能遇到的真实的职业场景而确定的。

(2) 根据任务要求, 逐步完成任务。对主要任务列出内容要点、分清层次。

(3) 要求写出短文时, 应以相应的记叙文、议论文、说明文、应用文等文体来表达, 并能灵活运用所学的关联词或增添适当的过渡句, 将各要点词或句有机地连接起来, 使之语句通顺、上下连贯、主旨突出。

① 要用自己最熟悉的词汇或句型去表达要说的意思, 尽量多使用简单句和短句;

② 要注意时态、语态、语气, 尤其要注意动词的变化、主谓一致及一些习惯用法等。

(4) 反复阅读检查初稿, 校对全篇, 认真誊写并注意卷面整洁。

任务完成后，要从头到尾仔细阅读和修改，看看内容是否符合任务要求，内容有无遗漏，对任务的说明是否自相矛盾，文意是否通顺、连贯，有无时态、语态等语法错误。努力做到句与句之间过渡自然，文章结构合理，语言正确，文理通顺。还要看是否达到了规定的字数。确信无误，再正式誊写，此时书写一定要工整，卷面一定要整洁。

案例分析

志愿服务是社会文明的体现。志愿服务能丰富个人的生活阅历、强化社会责任感。某学校将迎来英国专家进行校际学术交流，本次活动需要多名志愿者。

任务一 阅读学校征集志愿者的广告，完成任务单。



Four British engineers will come to our school on September 20. They are going to teach us how to use the new equipment in the lab. We have four positions for volunteers. Position 1: We need volunteers to work as tour guides to offer general help. Position 2: We need at least three volunteers to set up the projectors, computers and the equipment in the lab. Position 3: We also need some help in the kitchen. And Position 4: Some help at the reception desk. If your English is good and you are willing to help, please

come on board!

Worksheet

Items	School's Needs
Time	on (1)_____
Event	Four foreign engineers will come to school. School needs (2)_____.
Positions	1. Work as tour guides 2. Help in the (3)_____ 3. Help in the (4)_____ 4. Help at the (5)_____

任务二 假如你是“Zhang Li”，愿意做志愿者。写一篇演讲稿，竞争志愿者的某一个职位。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。



参考答案

任务一

(1) September 20 (2) volunteers (3) lab (4) kitchen (5) reception desk

任务二

Hello, everybody! I'm very pleased to be here. My name is Zhang Li. I want to be a volunteer and work as a tour guide. I'm in Grade 2. My major is Business Tourism. I'm interested in it. I've learned much about it. I'm familiar with many places of interest. English is my favorite. My oral English is very good. I won the first in the oral English competition in our school.

If I could be one of the volunteers, I would try my best to work for foreign engineers and give them the best help. I'll show them the spirit of our young generation.

Thank you for your listening!



专项训练

(一)

21 世纪的今天, 服务无处不在。为客户提供优质的服务、满足顾客多层次、多方位的需求是服务类企业生存和发展的根本。

“Baluch's Indian Restaurant”正在进行提升服务能力的改革。假如你是经理, 请根据餐厅的宣传广告, 写一份餐厅活动的口头介绍, 以方便接待顾客。

BALUCH'S
INDIAN RESTAURANT

\$ 8 Lunch Buffet

Available at our Queens and Tribeca branches
11:30 am-2 pm, Monday-Friday Just \$ 8, all January!
Try a little—or a lot—of great tasting Indian food



Free glass of house wine!

Stay warm this winter with a free glass of house wine when you dine at any Baluch's branch, all January!

New: Order online!





Delicious Indian food, delivered
Visit order.baluch-restaurant.com and browse the menu: choose your favorite dishes; pay cash on delivery...it's as easy as that!

内容要点:

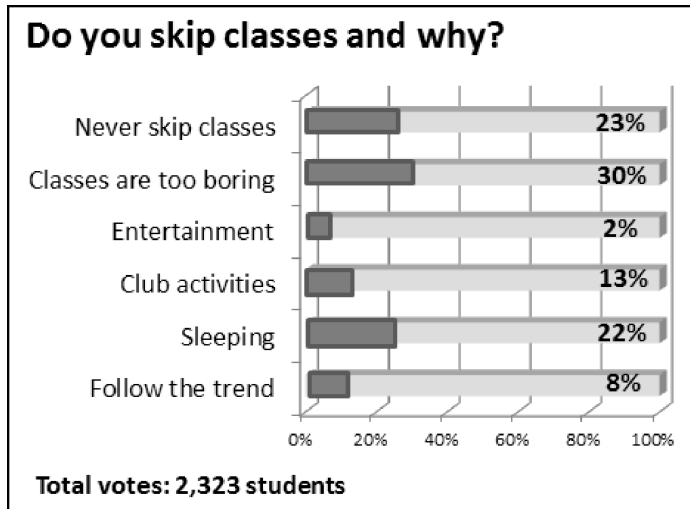
1. 本次活动的内容和时间。
2. 在线预订事宜。

注意: 文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称; 词数: 80~120。

(二)

高等教育正在走向大众化, 越来越多的年轻人有机会进入大学。但由于各方面原因, 大学生上课出勤率不高。

为了全面了解在校学生的学习情况, 某记者对几所大学学生缺席课堂情况做了调查。请你根据下面的调查结果, 写一篇报道。



内容要点:

1. 对结果进行描述分析。
2. 针对其中 2~3 种现象提出建议。

注意: 文中不得透漏真实个人姓名和学校名称; 词数: 80~120。

(三)

助梦腾飞, 融入世界——“一带一路”倡议构建我国对外开放新格局。能合理安排来自世界各国人员的会议和餐饮事宜是对秘书工作的新要求。

假如你是一家外资公司的秘书“Li Yang”，你们公司计划承办一个大型会议，会后需安排餐饮。

任务一 阅读下面信息，完成任务单。

You work as a secretary in a foreign company in Beijing. Your company is going to hold a conference. There will be 60 guests who are from all over Asia to attend it. You are responsible for the arrangement of food and drinks for the conference. You should choose a restaurant that is not far from your company. You have to consider the difference in their food preference. You wish to find a five-star chef and you can hopefully limit the per capita (人头) cost to no more than ¥ 300.

Worksheet

Where is the company?	(1)_____.
Where are the guests from?	(2)_____.
How many guests are there?	(3)_____.
What requirements does the company have for the chef?	(4)_____.
How much can the company pay per capital for the meal?	(5)_____.

任务二 根据公司需要，写一份详细的就餐安排，以书面形式呈现给经理。

内容要点：transportation, restaurant, tables, main food, drinks, chef, price and so on

注意：文中不得透漏个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120；开头结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

Dear manager,

Our company is going to hold a conference. We will invite 60 people from all over Asia.

Yours,

Li Yang

(四)

精彩的学生社团活动是培养学生兴趣爱好，繁荣校园文化的第二课堂。

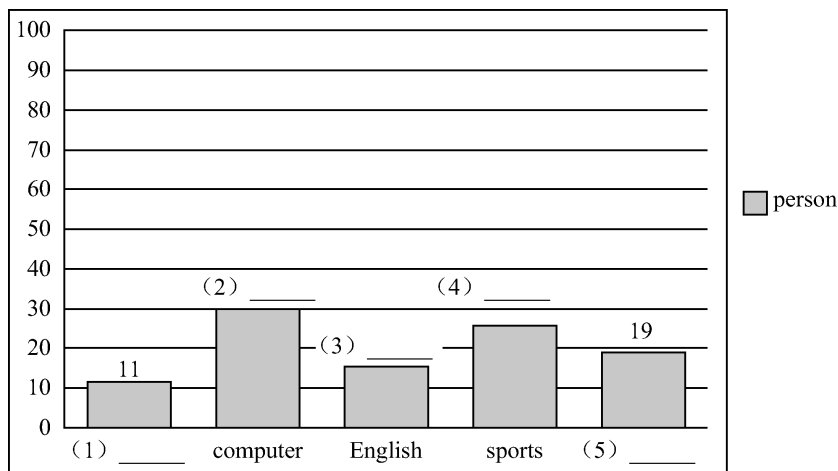
下面是对即将加入社团的 100 名学生进行的关于兴趣爱好的调查报告，请根据要求，完成任务。

任务一 阅读调查报告，完成柱状图的绘制。

There are five clubs in our school, which are cooking club, computer club, English club, sports club and music club. We did a survey on the interests and hobbies among 100 students. Here is the result of the survey. Ten of the students enjoy delicious food and try to make food by themselves. And there is also one student who wants to learn cooking for his mother. Eight

of them say they want to be computer programmers in the future. They are all interested in computer games and they want to design the new online games. 22% of the students would like to experience the excitement of making flash all by themselves. Fifteen of the students say English is their favorite subject. And they often chat with friends in English. They want to join a club where they can invite some foreigners to help them improve their spoken English. 20 of the students want to join a sports club and do some exercise like yoga to reduce stress with the help of the staff. There are 5 girls who say they are getting fatter. They want to join a health program to make themselves healthy and happy. 19% of the students like dancing and singing. They want to take part in some performances and experience the pleasure of music.

The result of the survey



任务二 选择其中的一个社团，为他们设计宣传广告。

内容要点：

1. 社团的名称。
2. 活动内容。
3. 活动的时间，地点。
4. 联系方式。
5. 会员收费。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

(五)

针对性集中管理是受很多人认可和欢迎的成熟社区服务模式。

暑假将至，为了帮社区的孩子度过一个有意义的假期，社区决定成立一个暑假托管中心（Summer Care Center）并就此向家长征询建议。

任务一 阅读下面信息，完成任务单。

The summer holiday is coming. That means parents have to find other ways to kill the kids' time. Here are some parents' suggestions about the Summer Care Center.

Ms. Ding: First of all, I work full-time. I'm a single mum and there is nobody who can help me look after the child and my job ends at 5:30 pm, so he must have care. I don't want him just in a place where he's either parked in front of a TV or handed a crayon or something like that. I hope the center can offer some activities which can give the child a colorful holiday.

Madam Lee, who has two sons, said such places could help to prevent children from having to wander around during the holiday. "It's so convenient that I don't have to worry about their safety. I also hope the center can offer the children cooked lunch and provide some programs that are related to the pupil's studies," she said, "If they miss out on anything in school, the care center's teachers will help them catch up."

Mr. Chen said the fee should be reasonable. It's the best that it's no more than 50 yuan per day. They can offer some service such as homework supervision(作业监督), studying for the new term and so on. Of course, they can organize some outdoor activities, like swimming, hiking or a two or three days' trip. All of them can give the children a meaningful holiday.

Worksheet

Related to children's studies: homework (1) _____; studying for the new term	Other service: offer (2) _____ lunch; guarantee children's safety
Outdoor activities: swimming; hiking; a (3) _____ trip	Time: Mon.-Fri. 8:00 am-(4) _____ pm Fee: (5) _____ yuan a day Place: Room 201, Community Center

任务二 根据家长意见，完成社区“Summer Care Center”的宣传海报。
注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Join us – Summer Care Center

Aims



When

Where

Special offer

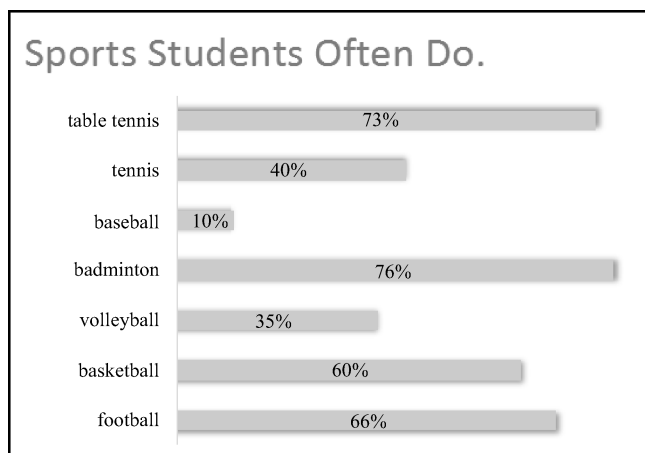
Cost

For more information, please call us at 15498762148.

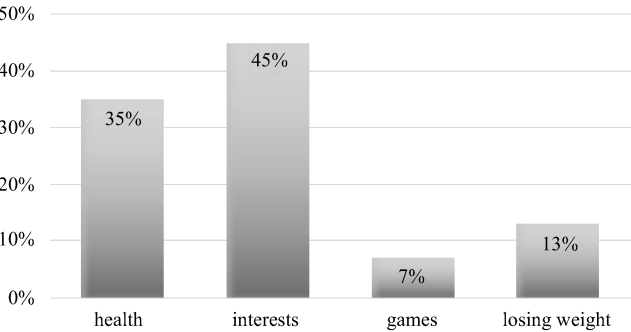
(六)

为了贯彻落实健康第一的指导思想，学校要切实加强体育工作，积极促进学生参加体育锻炼。

任务一 下面是对某地学生常进行的运动以及运动动机的调查结果，请根据图表内容，完成下面的表格。



Factors you think about most when doing the sports.



Let's do sports!	
1	_____ of the students often play badminton.
2	The number of the students who often play _____ is the least.
3	60% of the students often play basketball, which is the closest to playing _____.
4	_____ are the most important factor that most students think about when they do sports.
5	There are _____ of the students who want to lose weight when doing sports.

任务二 假如你是一名记者，请写一篇宣传稿，介绍学生经常进行的运动、分析学生运动的动机，并宣传体育锻炼的重要性。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

We did a survey about the sports students often do and the factors they think about most.


(七)

很多学生和家长都渴望过一个有意义的假期。某网球俱乐部为了让学生的假期有意义，特推出假期活动。假如你是该俱乐部的工作人员，请根据海报内容，写一篇简介，介绍俱乐部的活动。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Tennis club activities for summer holiday

- ◇ One-to-one training during the summer holiday. From 2:00 pm to 5:00 pm (150 yuan per hour)
- ◇ Experienced coaches(教练).
- ◇ Tennis racket supplied for free.
- ◇ Drinks and fruits ready for you during breaks.
- ◇ Tel: 8756038
- ◇ Add: 808 Park Road



Hello, everyone. Welcome to our club. _____

(八)

青少年是国家的未来。关注青少年身心健康，培养健康的生活方式是学校的一项重要任务。

任务一 假如你是学校医务室的工作人员“Jenny”，你们学校要举办一次关于健康与疾病预防的讲座。阅读材料，完成表格。

Good afternoon, everyone!

May I have your attention, please? I have an announcement to make.

Since the flu is around us, we should pay great attention to our health and get some knowledge about the terrible disease. Our school has invited Doctor Liu to give us a lecture about how to prevent the flu. It will start at 4:00 pm on Friday afternoon in our school lecture hall. Students majoring in nursing are required to attend the speech. Please be there on time. That's all. Thank you.

Please complete the following form.

An important lecture	
Topic	How to prevent the (1) _____
Time	At (2) _____ on Friday afternoon
Place	School (3) _____ hall
Speaker	(4) _____
Attendee	Students majoring in (5) _____

任务二 请你给校长“Mr. Ge”写一封电子邮件邀请他出席讲座并向他汇报相关事宜。

内容包括：讲座主题，主讲人，讲座的时间、地点，参会者等。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Dear Mr. Ge,

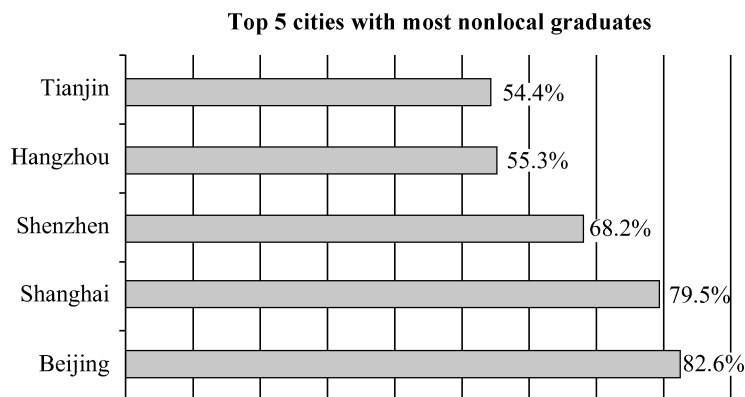
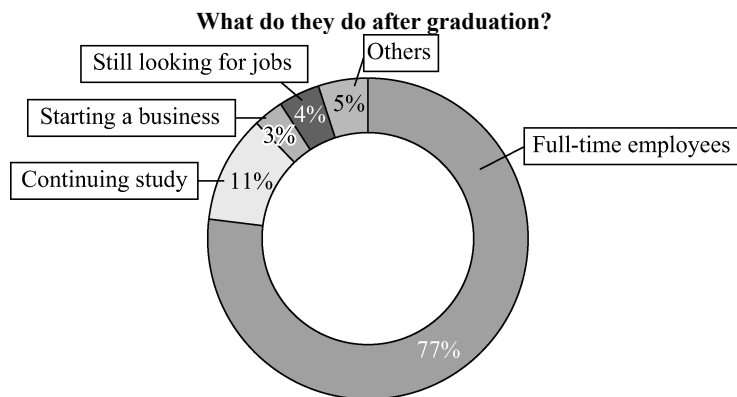
Yours,

Jenny

(九)

大学生就业率一直是社会各界关注的问题。

任务一 下面是对 300 000 名大学生就业情况调查问卷的数据分析图表。根据图表信息完成句子。



1. The number of the graduates still looking for jobs is _____.
2. After graduation, about _____ graduates will start a business.
3. _____% of college students continue their study when they graduate from the college.
4. When choosing jobs, most graduates will go to some cities with well-developed business and industry. _____ is the most popular city for them.

5. _____% of the nonlocal graduates want to work in Hangzhou according to the survey.

任务二 假如你是“China Daily”的外文记者，请写一篇报道，描述图表信息。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

According to a survey about the employment of 300,000 college graduates, _____

(十)

服务是酒店的无形和无价商品，也是酒店在市场竞争中脱颖而出的重要保障。假如你是某星级酒店的前台经理“Simon”，接听了顾客“Mrs. Stevenson”的投诉电话。请根据所给信息完成下面的任务。

任务一 阅读对话，填写任务单。

Clerk: Good evening, Front Desk. Can I help you?

Guest: This is Mrs. Stevenson, Room 1503. I've just checked in and I'm not happy with my room.

Clerk: May I know what is wrong?

Guest: The room is smelly and there is someone's hair on the bed! I didn't expect such things would happen in your hotel.

Clerk: I'm sorry to hear that, Mrs. Stevenson. I'll send a room attendant to your room at once. She will bring air fresher and make up the bed again for you. We do apologize for the inconvenience.

Guest: That's fine. Thank you.

Clerk: You're welcome, Mrs. Stevenson. My name is Simon, and if there is anything else I can do for you, please don't hesitate to call me.

Worksheet

Time	Tuesday, May 5th	Guest	Mrs. Stevenson
Clerk	(1) _____	Room Number	(2) _____
Reason	The room is smelly.		
	There is someone's (3) _____ on the bed.		
Solution	The room attendant will bring (4) _____ to your room at once.		
	The room attendant will (5) _____ the bed again.		

任务二 请根据以上投诉（complaint）信息，写一篇晨会发言稿，强调注意事项，加强服务意识。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Good morning, everyone! _____

第三部分 综合训练

综合训练一

第 I 卷 选择题

一、英语知识运用

- _____ the weather like today?
—It's sunny.
A. How B. How's C. What's D. What
- Jane, you wear a new dress today!
—It fits me well, _____ the color is not my favorite.
A. but B. and C. or D. so
- I _____ in this school since last year.
A. studied B. have studied C. study D. had studied
- No one knows _____ will happen next.
A. what B. when C. why D. if
- I'll go to France for a holiday next month.
—Great! _____!
A. Have a good time B. Good luck
C. Glad to see you again D. Best wishes
- Nick is not at school. _____?
—He has a pain in his heart.
A. Who's that B. What's the matter
C. What does he do D. Where is he
- I don't mind lending you my dictionary.
—You _____. I have already bought one.
A. needn't B. mustn't C. can't D. shouldn't
- There is still a copy of the book in the library. Will you go and borrow _____?

- No, I'd rather buy _____ in the bookstore.
A. one; one B. it; one C. one; it D. it; it
9. Don't make noises, _____?
A. do you B. will you C. did you D. don't you
10. You should make a note of what was _____ before you make your weekly shopping list.
A. on sale B. on time C. on business D. on TV
11. I've come to apply _____ the position as a cashier.
A. to B. for C. as D. of
12. —Would you like me to bring you a cup of coffee?
—_____.
A. Yes, I'd like B. It's a pleasure
C. Yes, please D. It doesn't matter
13. —Have you found the wallet _____ you lost yesterday?
—Yes. I left it at home.
A. that B. who C. whose D. where
14. —It's too late. I have to go now.
—Oh. It's raining heavily outside. You'd better wait here _____ it stops.
A. since B. until C. while D. though
15. —We need three single rooms for the first week in June.
—_____. The hotel's not busy then.
A. No problem B. Don't bother C. Never mind D. It doesn't matter
16. —I'm sorry I broke the cup.
—Oh, _____. It wasn't very expensive.
A. you'd better not B. I'm afraid not
C. as you wish D. that's all right
17. Everybody except Mike and Linda _____ there when the meeting began.
A. is B. was C. are D. were
18. —My teacher says she's canceling the class play. I just can't understand.
—_____. You were looking forward to it.
A. It doesn't matter B. It's very unwise of her
C. Don't worry about it D. You must be disappointed
19. Studies show that people are more _____ to suffer from back problems if they always sit before computer screens for long hours.
A. likely B. possible C. probable D. sure
20. When you leave, please turn off the lights _____ the energy.
A. save B. saving C. to save D. saved



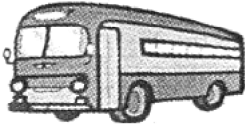
21. Of all the drinks, tea is _____ in the world. It has 5,000 years of history in China.
A. old B. older C. the oldest D. very old
22. —Sorry, I have to _____ now. It's time for class.
—OK. I'll call back later.
A. hang up B. break up C. give up D. hold up
23. You look well. The air and sea foods in Sanya must _____ you, I suppose.
A. agree with B. agree on C. agree to D. agree about
24. —What does she look like?
—She _____ thin with long shiny hair.
A. is B. looks like C. has D. does
25. Betty likes to help others. She is the most _____ in our class.
A. quiet B. warm-hearted C. forgetful D. naughty
26. The Smiths are traveling in Qingdao. When they see the sign, they can not _____ here.



- A. swim B. shop C. fish D. walk
27. —Let's go shopping after school.
—_____ Call me at any time.
A. Sounds great. B. What for?
C. Hold on, please. D. What a pity!
28. _____ came to see him just now.
A. Two friends of Bob's B. Bob's two friends
C. Two Bob's friends D. Bob two friends
29. Mary is so _____. She comes to you whenever you're in trouble.
A. useful B. careful C. thankful D. helpful
30. —Thank you for supporting the volunteer project.
—_____! Many hands make light work.
A. My pleasure B. All right
C. That's right D. Never mind

二、阅读理解

A

Side A	No. 293083
	<p style="text-align: center;">Student Bus Card</p> <p>Name: Lilian From: April 1st, 2012 To: June 30th, 2012 Price: £ 180 College: University of Chichester</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Not valid for travel unless it's used in the bus companies of Stagecoach, Season, Goldrider and Busabout in the UK.</i></p>
Side B	No. 293083
	
<p>Thank you for traveling with</p> <p>If the card is found, please return to any Stagecoach driver.</p>	
	

31. The card is used for _____.

A. taking a taxi
B. traveling by train

C. taking a bus
D. entering the college
32. Lilian is _____.

A. a bus driver
B. a university student

C. a teacher in a college
D. a middle school student
33. The card can be used in any of the four _____.

A. cities
B. colleges

C. universities
D. companies
34. According to the reading material, if you find a lost card, you can _____.

A. sell it
B. phone Lilian

C. use it for traveling
D. give it back to any Stagecoach driver
35. You can not find _____ in the card.

A. Lilian's age
B. the price

C. the card number
D. the time limit

B

Imagine one day the water taps in your house stop running. You have to pay a lot of money to buy water from shops. And still there isn't enough water for everyone. Your mother has to save the family's shower water to use for washing clothes. Would you be able to stand that kind of life?

Probably not. But that is what kids in Yemen are experiencing. According to a report, the capital, Sana, will run out of drinking water as early as 2025.

Because of the water shortage, the Yemen government often cuts the water supply. Hannan, an 18-year-old girl, told the Time, "In a good week we'll have a water supply all week. But then the following week there will be water only for a day or two."

Hannan said only rich people have enough water to use. They can buy water from the shops or from the water trucks. Private companies own the trucks. They travel around the city every day to sell water—at very high prices.

"A lot of people can't pay for it," she said.

The government is thinking of making use of seawater. But it will cost a lot and it may not happen soon enough to help the people of Yemen.

36. How old is Hannan?

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| A. She is eight. | B. She is eighteen. |
| C. She is seventeen. | D. She is seven. |

37. The underlined word "that" means _____.

- A. buying water from shops
- B. having enough drinking water
- C. suffering from water shortage
- D. washing clothes with used water

38. From the passage, we know that _____.

- A. the people of Yemen don't have to worry about water
- B. people in Yemen have no water to use during a bad week
- C. Sana will have no drinking water in 50 years
- D. private companies make much money by selling water

39. The Yemen government _____.

- A. may try to make use of seawater
- B. does nothing about the water problem
- C. only cares about rich people's lives
- D. may solve the problem soon

40. The writer wants to tell us _____.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. not to use seawater | B. not to waste water |
| C. to drink less water | D. to sell water to Yemen |

第 II 卷 非选择题

三、短文填空

Almost every day, we discuss the topic of health. But what is health? “Health” means eating well, getting enough exercise and having a 41. _____ (health) 42. _____ (生活方式). Here are some useful rules.

Eat different kinds of food, eat fruits and vegetables. But many of 43. _____ (we) only eat our 44. _____ (favor) food.

Drink water and milk most often. Everyone knows 45. _____ is important. Besides water, kids also need plenty 46. _____ calcium (钙) to grow strong bones, which is rich in milk.

Pay attention 47. _____ your body. When your stomach is full, stop 48. _____ (eat). Eating too much makes you become fat.

Try to 49. s _____ more time doing sports, like 50. _____ (慢跑), swimming and so on.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: May I take your order, please?

B: Yes. I'd like 51. _____.

A: All right. And 52. _____?

B: Yes. I'll have a salad.

A: OK. What kind of dressing would you like?

B: I'm not sure. What have you got?

A: We have Italian and French dressing.

B: 53. _____.

A: 54. _____?

B: I'd like a Coke, please.

A: Anything else?

B: No, thanks. That will be all.

A: Thank you.

B: 55. _____.

五、职场应用

企业只有加强交流合作，才能在发展中获得双赢。

你是某公司经理“Sara”，请根据音乐会宣传海报中的信息，写一份邀请函，邀请你的合作伙伴——外资公司经理“Linda”来参加音乐会。

MasterCard Center
the Grand Concert on Christmas Eve
by Langlang

- Time: 19:00-21:00
- Date: December 24th
- Tel: 010-88228938
- Email: ytian@mastercardcenter.com.cn
- Prices: ¥ 280, ¥ 480, ¥ 680, ¥ 880, ¥ 1280
- Venue: MasterCard Center, No. 69 Fuxing Road,
Haidian District, Beijing



注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Dear Linda,

Yours,
Sara

综合训练二

第 I 卷 选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. (on the mobile phone)

—Where are you? I can't see you here at the theater.

—_____. I'm just one block away.

A. Good idea

B. My pleasure

C. Nice talking to you

D. I'm coming

2. —_____ does your new friend look like?

—He is tall with short blond hair.

- A. What B. How C. Who D. Where
3. —Are you going to take part in speech contest?
—_____ It's too good an opportunity to miss.
A. No problem. B. That's for sure.
C. Certainly not. D. Why bother?
4. —When did you have your school trip?
—_____.
A. In five days B. For five days
C. Twice a week D. Five days ago
5. —Do you have Mary's phone number?
—Sorry, _____.
A. I don't think so B. forget it
C. here you are D. I can't remember it
6. —Have you _____?
—No, I had the wrong number.
A. got in B. got away C. got off D. got through
7. Mary telephoned the travel agency to _____ three air tickets to London.
A. bring B. arrange C. take D. book
8. China strongly _____ South Korea to stop the THAAD, otherwise South Korea will only end up hurting themselves and others.
A. advised B. adjusted C. avoided D. appeared
9. I often _____ the words I don't know in the dictionary or on the Internet.
A. look up B. look at C. look for D. look into
10. I can _____ be a teacher. I'm not a very patient person.
A. seldom B. ever C. never D. always
11. —Let me help you move the sofa.
—No, thanks. I can do it by _____.
A. me B. my C. myself D. mine
12. —_____?
—It's on sale. You only need to pay 50 yuan for it.
A. What's for it B. How much is it
C. Can I help you D. May I help you
13. —_____ up, Anna. It's seven thirty.
—One more minute, Mum.
A. Get B. Gets C. Getting D. Got
14. Yang Liwei came back to the earth after a _____ trip to space.
A. twenty hour's B. twenty-hours' C. twenty hours D. twenty-hour

15. Mary's child can't take the medicine. Her child may be _____ years old.



- A. 2 B. 4 C. 6 D. 8
16. "What is the temperature at 2:30 pm, January 19th?" "It's _____."

Temperature	January 18th	January 19th	January 20th
High Temperature	22 °C at 2:00 pm	19 °C at 2:30 pm	23 °C at 2:00 pm
Low Temperature	18 °C at 6:00 am	15 °C at 6:30 am	19 °C at 6:20 am

- A. 22 °C B. 18 °C C. 15 °C D. 19 °C
17. If someone comes to see me, ask them to leave a _____.
- A. message B. letter C. sentence D. notice
18. If you want to get more information about English learning, please visit our _____:
www. ffd. com.
- A. office B. website C. company D. store
19. —How nice the music sounds!
—It does! The peaceful music will make you feel _____.
- A. relaxing B. relaxed C. boring D. bored
20. —The dish is delicious!
—Well, at least it's _____ the one I cooked yesterday.
- A. worse than B. as good as C. as well as D. as bad as
21. —Do you know _____ the skill training classes _____.
—Next term.
- A. when; will take B. when; took C. whether; take D. whether; took
22. —How much did you pay for the drink?
—None. It was _____.
- A. cheap B. expensive C. free D. easy
23. —They have been to the United States.
—Really? When _____ there?
- A. do they go B. did they go
C. will they go D. have they gone
24. Linda bought a new house _____ a small garden. She will move in next week.
- A. for B. from C. with D. of
25. Father was leaving for Shanghai on business when I _____ home.
- A. arrives B. arrived C. was arriving D. have arrived

- ## 二、阅读理解

If someone is drowning(溺水)

If you can't swim, don't get into the water. Cry out for help.

Remember that danger is never as far away as you think. Take care of yourself at all times!

31. Why do students like the self-protection lesson?

- ① Because there are no tests.
- ② Because the lessons are boring.
- ③ Because they can learn how to save lives.
- ④ Because they know how to stop danger before it happens.

A. ①② B. ②③ C. ①②④ D. ①③④

32. What will you do if a bicycle hurts you?

- A. I will remember the bicycle number.
- B. I won't let the rider go until I call my parents.
- C. I will let the rider go before I call my parents.
- D. I will let the rider go because I know how seriously I am hurt.

33. If your house is on fire, you must _____.

- A. put dry things on your body
- B. run quickly and take the lift
- C. run away and find an exit as quickly as you can
- D. take everything you have and then run away

34. There are _____ ways of self-protection mentioned in the passage.

A. 3 B. 4 C. 5 D. 6

35. The best title for this passage is _____.

- A. How to Keep Calm B. Self-protection
- C. A usual lesson D. Danger

B

Four Posters

Live Music—Late Night Jazz

Enjoy real American jazz. Herbie Davis, the famous trumpet player, is known to play well.

PLACE: The Jazz Club DATES: 10-25 March

PRICE: ¥ 80-100 TIME: 10:30 pm till late night Tel: 86468876

Scottish Dancing

Scottish dancing is nice and easy to learn. The Wonderful dance from England will be given.

PLACE: Jack Stein's DATES: 12-19 July

PRICE: ¥ 120 TIME: 7:30 am-11:00 pm TEL: 86427718

Shows in Shandong Museum	The Hotels		
The Great Collection of the Province Museum of Shandong.	SUN HOTEL		ROSE HOTEL
There are 12,000 pieces on show here. You can see the whole Chinese history.	1 Oct-31 Dec	¥ 160	¥ 190
PLACE: Shandong Museum	1 Jan-31 Mar	¥ 128	¥ 190
DATES: 1 Jun. -1 Aug.	1 Apr-30 Apr (closed)...		
PRICE: ¥ 50 (¥ 25 for student)	1 May-31 May	¥ 198	¥ 218
TIME: Monday-Friday	1 Jun-30 Sep	¥ 210	¥ 260
9:00 am-5:00 pm	TEL: 86486789		
Weekends: 9:30 am-9:00 pm	Email: lihong @ yahoo. com		
TEL: 86488699			

36. Herbie Davis is the name of _____.
A. the Jazz Club
B. American Jazz
C. a famous trumpet player
D. a Chinese hotel
37. My friend Marria wants to learn Scottish dancing. She can dial _____.
A. 86468876
B. 86427718
C. 86488699
D. 86486789
38. If one teacher with four students goes to visit Shandong Museum, they will pay _____ for it.
A. ¥ 100
B. ¥ 125
C. ¥ 150
D. ¥ 250
39. Sun Hotel and Rose Hotel are open for _____ months of the year.
A. nine
B. ten
C. eleven
D. twelve
40. You have ¥ 128 and you can _____ in March.
A. listen to American jazz
B. learn Scottish dancing
C. go to Shandong Museum
D. stay in Rose Hotel for a night

第 II 卷 非选择题

三、短文填空

An important part of learning something is making sure you plan your time and use it well. If you want to 41. _____ (记住) things well, you need to review 42. _____ (inform) you've learned. Try to follow the 43. _____ (建议).

Make a study timetable at least three 44. _____ (week) before your exams and follow time to relax and have 45. f _____.

While you are 46. _____ (study), have short regular breaks. Stand 47. _____ and walk around—you will 48. f _____ more awake.

Don't 49. w _____ too much. If you feel nervous, you won't learn as well as if you are 50. _____ (relax).

四、根据情景内容补全对话

A: Good morning. My name is Judy.

B: Nice to 51. _____ you, Judy.

A: I've come to apply for the position as a cashier.

B: OK. 52. _____ did you graduate from?

A: I graduated from Jinan Vocational School, and my 53. _____ is Business.

B: Do you have any work 54. _____ in this field?

A: Yes, I have worked in a supermarket for three months.

B: Have you brought your resume with you?

A: Yes, 55. _____ it is.

B: OK, we'll probably get back to you in a week.

A: Thank you very much for your consideration.

五、职场应用

优秀人才是企业发展的最大生产力。

假如你是某外企人力资源部的工作人员“John”，面试了求职者“Wang Li”，需要向经理“Mr. Smith”汇报。

任务一 阅读对话，填写任务单。

John: Good morning. Sit down, please.

Wang Li: Thank you.

John: Do you have a resume?

Wang Li: Yes, here you are.

John: What kind of job are you applying for?

Wang Li: I am applying for a position as a computer programmer.

John: What kind of education have you got?

Wang Li: I graduated from Shandong University.

John: What foreign languages can you speak?

Wang Li: I can speak English fluently and know a little French.

John: Do you have any work experience?

Wang Li: Yes, I once taught computer science in a high school in Jinan for 2 years.

John: What project have you ever taken part in?

Wang Li: I have taken part in the first engineering design of city general business computer network system.

John: OK, we'll probably contact you in a week.

Wang Li: Thank you for your consideration.

Worksheet

Name	Wang Li
Position	56. _____
Education	57. _____
Foreign languages	58. _____
59. _____	once taught computer science in a high school in Jinan for 2 years
Project	the first 60. _____ of city general business computer network system

任务二 根据面试信息，给人力资源部经理“Mr. Smith”发邮件告之。

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

Dear Mr. Smith,

Yours,

John

综合训练三

第 I 卷 选择题

一、英语知识运用

1. —Do you want another drink?

—_____.

A. I don't think so

B. My pleasure

C. Not at all

D. Yes, please

2. —Hi, Jack! How's it going?

- 161

- work in the city.
- A. both B. either C. neither D. none
15. —I don't know which T-shirt was _____, so I took them both.
—Yes, it's really difficult to choose.
- A. well B. better C. best D. good
16. —Excuse me, is the supermarket far from here?
—No, it's about _____.
- A. 7 minutes walk B. 7 minute walk
C. 7 minute's walk D. 7 minutes' walk
17. —Why are you so _____?
—Because our ping-pong player Fan Zhendong has won the world championship.
- A. excited B. exciting C. bored D. boring
18. —Why do you like the novel so much?
—Because it is the best one _____ I have ever read.
- A. which B. who C. that D. what
19. All electronic computers _____ five units although they are of different kinds.
- A. consist of B. rely on C. make up D. sum up
20. Henry is _____ tallest in his class.
- A. three B. the three C. third D. the third
21. —Would you mind feeding the pet at noon?
—_____.
- A. Have fun B. No, not at all C. Excuse me D. You're welcome
22. —Could you tell me _____?
—Yes. There is one on Center Street.
- A. where can I buy some stamps
B. when you will take your vacation
C. when was the telephone invented
D. if there are any good restaurants around here
23. The gym _____ many years ago. It was for the 2008 Olympic Games.
- A. build B. was built C. built D. was building
24. John works in a factory. He notices the following sign on production line. He needs to pay attention to his _____.



- A. feet B. hands C. head D. eyes
25. Jack _____ butter on his toast.
A. spread B. caused C. sprang D. affected
26. Mrs. Smith _____ live in Italy, didn't she?
A. use to B. was used to C. is used to D. used to
27. Are you satisfied _____ what I said?
A. about B. to C. on D. with
28. — An official said that they _____ a new law to protect the tourists the next year.
— That's good news for tourists.
A. would make B. makes C. made D. have made
29. — Gulf Hotel. Can I help you?
— I'd like to _____ a double room.
A. take B. make C. book D. type
30. — I'll take my driving test tomorrow.
— _____!
A. Enjoy yourself B. Congratulations
C. Have a good day D. Good luck

二、阅读理解

A

※ You won't drown if you remember these rules:

- Never swim alone.
- Never swim at a beach if there is no life guard.
- Never swim after a meal or when you feel hungry or tired.
- Never believe in rings(救生圈) or other swimming aids. You may lose them or they may let you sink.
- Don't stay in the water too long if it is cold.
- Never go out in a boat if you can't swim or if you are not wearing a life jacket.

※ If you get into difficulties, this is what you should do:

- Keep calm. Save your strength and your breath.
- Try to float on the water by moving your feet as if you are climbing some stairs.
- Raise your right arm and cry for help.

※ Remember:

- A red flag means that it is dangerous for all swimmers to enter the water.
- A blue flag means that it is dangerous for children and weak swimmers to enter the water.

31. Swimming is a good sport, _____.
 A. and you'd better go swimming alone
 B. but you'd better not go swimming after a tiring climb
 C. so you should stay in the water for a long time
 D. and you may swim when you see a red flag
32. Rings and other swimming aids _____.
 A. can not be believed in when swimming
 B. will never let you sink
 C. will never be lost
 D. are useless at all in swimming
33. If you see a blue flag, you should know _____ may swim there.
 A. all swimmers
 B. only children
 C. nobody
 D. strong swimmers
34. It is dangerous if _____.
 A. you swim with others
 B. you stay in the water for a short time
 C. you cannot swim, but go boating alone
 D. you wear a life jacket when boating
35. If you get into trouble, you should _____.
 A. keeps silent
 B. climb the stairs
 C. put up your right arm for help
 D. ask for a red flag

B

Here's the content of a book.

Unit	Readings	Skills	Words
Unit 1 Music	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Music & Feelings • Sad movies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding main ideas • Predicting by title 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kinds of music • Music stars
Unit 2 Sports	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • National sports • The ancient Olympic Games 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding main ideas • Guessing meaning of new words 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Action verbs • Names of sports • Sports tools
Unit 3 Weather	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weather service • Weather and nature 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding main ideas • Guessing meaning of new words 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weather conditions • Weather information
Unit 4 Culture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Traveling in India • Body language in the United States 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding main ideas • Predicting by title • Making inferences 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Culture studies • Culture and art
Unit 5 Space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Living in space • The planets 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Understanding main ideas • Understanding attitude 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Space news • Space terms

- ## 第 II 卷 非选择题

The class in America is almost the same 41. _____ that in China. But something is 42. d _____. If a teacher asks you a question, you should give an answer. If you don't 43. u _____ the question, put up your hand and ask the teacher to 44. _____ (repeat) it. There is no excuse for not doing your homework. If you 45. _____ (错过) a class, you should ask your teacher for the 46. _____. You mustn't miss a test. If you are 47. _____ (serious) ill, call and let the teacher know you will not be there for the test. Serious 48. _____ (ill) is the only reason for missing a test. Be 49. _____ time! It is 50. _____ (polite) to be late.

A: 51. _____ can I do for you?
B: Do you have any shirts?
A: We have some here. What size?
B: Size 41.
A: I see. This is a nice shirt.
B: Yes, that's the right size, but it's
A: How 53. _____ this one?
B: Yes. 54. _____ much is it?

A: One hundred and eighty yuan.

B: Well, I'll take it. Here is the money.

A: 55. _____ you.

五、职场应用

企业文化是企业的灵魂。企业文化活动能增强员工的团队意识，提升员工的凝聚力和归属感。

某外资公司打算召开年会，感谢员工一年来为公司做出的辛勤努力。假如你是企划部的工作人员，请根据下面的年会策划方案，写一份通知，发到公司办公群，告知全体员工。

Annual Meeting Plan

Purpose: To enhance team spirit and express thanks to all staff

Theme: New Hope, New Start!

Date: December 24th

Planner: Planning Department

Place: Blue Horizon International Hotel

Participants: all staff

Schedule:

Time	Activities
16:00	Take the assigned seats. Review the development of our company through a PPT.
16:20	Opening ceremony. The general manager will deliver an opening speech.
16:30	6 department managers are scheduled to give reports on their work and state the plan for next year.
17:00	Commend(表彰) the outstanding staff of this year. The commended staff will get awards and take a group photo.
17:30	Performances and games
18:30	Dinner starts.

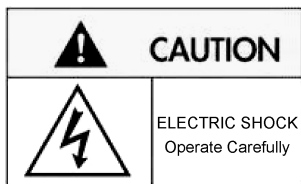
Expense budget(预算): 45,000 yuan

Matters needing attention:

1. All staff should be on time.
2. Every department should prepare a program.

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

5. —Do you know _____?
—Yes, of course. It will be hosted by Beijing and Zhangjiakou.
A. how will be the 2022 Winter Olympics
B. when will be the next Winter Olympics
C. which city will host the 2022 Winter Olympics
D. where will be the next Winter Olympics
6. —How much is the ticket to Central Park?
—A one-way ticket _____ \$ 40, and you can _____ another \$ 20 for a round-trip.
A. costs; pay B. costs; spend C. spends; pay D. pays; pay
7. It's surprising that your brother _____ Russian so quickly—he hasn't lived there very long.
A. picked up B. looked up C. put up D. made up
8. The secretary arranged a(n) _____ time and place for the applicants to have an interview.
A. important B. spare C. public D. convenient
9. A society can not be successful if it throws tradition away, but it can not be successful _____ if we do something to stop progress.
A. either B. neither C. too D. also
10. Don't meet an "Internet friend" alone, _____ something dangerous may happen to you.
A. or B. but C. and D. yet
11. My cousin is very busy with his work. He has _____ time to read newspapers.
A. little B. few C. a little D. a few
12. —Can I help you?
—I'd like _____ for my twin daughters.
A. two pair of shoes B. two pairs of shoe
C. two pair of shoe D. two pairs of shoes
13. I have two sisters, but _____ of them is a teacher.
A. all B. neither C. both D. none
14. Tom is an electrician. He needs to be careful to operate because _____.



- A. it's easy for fire break
B. it's easy for electric shock
C. there is a flood

- D. there is a heavy rain
15. My uncle lives _____ 116 Nanjing road. His room is _____ the sixth floor.
A. at; on B. to; at C. on; in D. of; to
16. —Have you _____ Mr. Wang's email?
—No, I haven't. My computer doesn't work.
A. heard from B. heard of C. replied to D. replied
17. —Look at the sign on the right.
—Oh, parking _____ here.
A. doesn't allow B. isn't allowed
C. didn't allow D. wasn't allowed
18. Zhang Li drives his car to another city. When he notices the following sign, he knows that _____.



- A. people can park their truck here
B. people can't park their truck here
C. this is not a car park
D. this is a truck park
19. — _____ I borrow your MP3?
— Sure. Here you are.
A. May B. Should C. Must D. Would
20. Emma always gets good grades in different exams because she is a _____ girl.
A. shy B. friendly C. hard-working D. polite
21. — Why do you collect so many old bikes?
—I'll have them _____ and give away to the children who don't have bikes.
A. fixed up B. used up C. set up D. given up
22. — Would you like some more tea?
— _____, please.
A. No more B. Just a little C. I've had enough D. Yes, I would
23. —Excuse me. _____?
—It is over there, near the bus stop.
A. How do you like the cinema B. May I ask you the way
C. Where is Bank of China D. How far is the market from here
24. —Shall we go hiking tomorrow?
— _____. The weather says the storm is coming.
A. Sure B. Good idea
C. I'm afraid we can't D. That's all right

25. Tom is driving to Beijing. He notices the sign in front of him. He has to stop because

_____.



- A. he is too tired and he wants to have a rest
 B. there is some beautiful scenery near the road
 C. there is something emergent happening on the road
 D. he wants to eat something
26. —*The First Half of My Life* is a TV play _____ people can learn more about their life. Everyone should earn their own living and be independent.
 —Yes. I like watching it very much.
 A. which B. whose C. where D. that
27. —Do you have enough people to carry the boxes?
 —No, I think we need _____ people.
 A. another B. two others C. more two D. two more
28. —Do you think we should share our problems with our parents?
 —Sure! _____ we talk to them, we'll feel worse.
 A. If B. When C. Because D. Unless
29. —Is Mr. Green really ill?
 —_____. He is in hospital now.
 A. I don't think it is B. No, he isn't
 C. I hope so D. I'm afraid so
30. —Can you tell me how long you _____ the Huawei mobile phone, Mr. Zhang?
 —Nearly a year. It works very well.
 A. have bought B. had had C. have had D. bought

二、阅读理解

A

Jordan's Annual Sale

This week only!

Garment: men's, women's and children's clothing:

shoes, coats, suits and skirts

Cosmetics: perfume, lipstick and cream

Jewelry: rings, earrings and necklaces

Address: Fuxingmen Street

Open time: from 9 am to 9 pm

Stone Open! 10 am to 6 pm It is the time of a year again. We have many things on sales for your office. All office furniture: desks, chairs, computer tables and bookcases. 20% off Computers, fax machines and telephones. 10% off Pens, ball-pens, paper, notebooks, backpacks 5%	
Angel is having a big week sale! Everything 30% off All TVs, radios, MP3, digital cameras and computers 29 Suzhou Street Open from 9:30 am to 6:30 pm	

31. Jordan's is a _____.
 A. restaurant B. used goods market C. bookstore D. shopping mall
32. Bookcases are on sale in _____.
 A. Stone B. Angel
 C. Jordan's D. Fuxing shopping center
33. Angel has MP3 at _____ off.
 A. 30% B. 20% C. 10% D. 5%
34. Angel's sale is only for _____.
 A. two days B. five days C. seven days D. two weeks
35. Jordan's is at _____.
 A. Fucheng Street B. Suzhou Street
 C. Fuxingmen Street D. the main street

B

What will the house of the future look like? Could it have gardens on its walls, or a pool with fish for dinner? Architects believe that they are all possibilities. The only thing for sure is that the houses will be as green as possible.

The tree house

Many architects in the world would like to build a "tree house". Like a leaf, the surface of the house collects sunlight during the day. The energy can be used to heat water, produce electricity, and even create fresh air for the home. The "root" of the house is deep under the ground. It uses the soil to adjust the home's temperature.

The Lizard house

Like a lizard(蜥蜴), changing color with the weather is the most important design of a lizard house. When it's in the bright sun, the cover of the house will turn dark to protect it from strong heat. During dark days, it turns white and takes in as much light and heat as possible to produce energy.

Meals at home

This design is perhaps as much about the future of food production as architecture(建筑风格). It has gardens on the outside wall of the house. People can plant tomatoes, carrots and green tea on them. So every day in the morning, you just need to walk outside and collect your meals.

Learning from the past

Looking to the future isn't the only way to be green. Sometimes, ancient techniques(古老的技术) can also help cut down energy use. For example, a chimney(烟囱) can be a useful air conditioner because it is easier for hot air to flow out at the chimney.

36. We can heat water, produce electricity or create fresh air for the home _____.
 A. with the root or a leaf
 B. with the energy from sunlight
 C. with the soil under the ground
 D. with gardens on its walls
37. What will happen to the cover of the lizard house when it's in the bright sun?
 A. It will take in light.
 B. It will produce energy.
 C. It will turn dark.
 D. It will turn white.
38. The passage seems to tell us that meals at home in the future _____.
 A. will be more delicious
 B. need more cooks
 C. cost as much as possible
 D. will be greener
39. A chimney can be a useful air conditioner to _____.
 A. flow out the hot air
 B. collect sunlight
 C. produce energy
 D. protect the roof
40. What is the best title of the passage?
 A. Green house of the future
 B. The greener, the better
 C. How to build green houses
 D. Changes of the houses

第 II 卷 非选择

三、短文填空

On Sept. 19, 2014, Alibaba went public(上市) and raised \$ 25 billion. Ma, a former English teacher, has become the 41. _____ (rich) man in China. On a 1995 trip to the US, Ma was 42. _____ (show) the 43. I _____ for the first time. Ma returned to 44. _____ and set up a website 45. _____ (call) China Pages without even knowing much about 46. _____ (计算机). Four years later, Ma, his wife and his friends set 47. _____ Alibaba in Hangzhou. He believed in the Internet 48. _____ (busy) potential when few other Chinese did. 15 years later, Alibaba has 49. _____ (发展) into the world's largest e-commerce 50. _____ (公司), owning popular shopping websites like Taobao and TMALL.

四、根据情景内容补全对话

- A: Good morning, Dr. White's office. 51. _____ can I do for you?
 B: Good morning, this is John Brown. I'd like to make an appointment with Dr. White.
 A: What's the 52. _____ with you?
 B: I've got a pain 53. _____ my chest.
 A: How long have you been like this?
 B: For two days.
 A: Well, let me see. How 54. _____ tomorrow? He will be available at 10 o'clock.
 B: That's fine. 55. _____ you, I'll come by then.

五、职场应用

旅游业逐渐发展成为全球最大的新兴产业之一，也是我国重要的国民经济支柱产业。美国的“Black”先生一家想来中国旅游。假如你是一家旅行社的导游“Li Hua”，请根据“Black”先生一家的旅游要求，为他们制定合适的旅游计划。

任务一 阅读“Black”一家人来中国旅游的要求，完成下表。

We are looking forward to traveling to China. Chinese traditional culture, especially the Spring Festival, is what we expect to experience. My son, aged 12, wants to spend at least one day in a seaside city. My wife enjoys seafood very much. We have known that there are many places of interest in China, such as the Great Wall, the Confucius Temple and the Longmen Grottoes. We would be glad if we could visit at least one of them. We want the cost for each person to be below 11,850 yuan. We hope to stay in China for 6 days.

Worksheet

Requirements of the Blacks	Places to travel	A seaside city, 56. _____, the Confucius Temple, or the Longmen Grottoes.
	Travel cost	Below 57. _____ yuan for each person.
	Travel time	58. _____ days.
	The number of travelers	59. _____.
	Food	His wife enjoys 60. _____.

任务二 根据“Black”一家人来中国旅游的要求，为他们制订合适的旅行计划，并给“Mr. Black”发电子邮件商议。

主要内容：

1. When will the Blacks come to China?
2. Where will they travel?
3. What activities will they have?
4. How much will they spend?

提示：The Spring Festival is on Jan 28th.

注意：文中不得透漏真实的个人姓名和学校名称；词数：80~120。

参考答案

第一部分 英语知识运用

二、语法

1. 名词

1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. C
11. B 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. A 18. D 19. B 20. B

2. 代词

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. A
11. B 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. A 16. D 17. D 18. B 19. B 20. D

3. 形容词

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C
11. B 12. A 13. D 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. A 18. C 19. A 20. C

4. 副词

1. C 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. D
11. C 12. C 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. D 17. D 18. B 19. D 20. C

5. 数词

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C
11. C 12. A 13. B 14. C 15. A 16. B 17. A 18. A 19. B 20. B

6. 介词

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. B
11. A 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. B 16. C 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. C

7. 冠词

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A
11. D 12. C 13. D 14. C 15. B 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. A

8. 动词和动词短语

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B
11. D 12. D 13. A 14. C 15. D 16. B 17. B 18. D 19. B 20. A

9. 动词的时态

1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. A
11. B 12. D 13. B 14. D 15. B 16. A 17. A 18. D 19. D 20. B

10. 动词的被动语态

1. D 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. A
11. A 12. A 13. B 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. A

11. 非谓语动词

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. D
11. B 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. B 17. D 18. B 19. A 20. C

12. 情态动词

1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B
11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. C 19. A 20. C

13. 简单句和并列句

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. A
11. D 12. B 13. C 14. D 15. A 16. A 17. C 18. B 19. A 20. D

14. 主从复合句

(1) 状语从句

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. B
11. B 12. C 13. D 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. D 18. A 19. D 20. D

(2) 定语从句

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. D
11. B 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. A 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. A 20. C

(3) 名词性从句

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C
11. B 12. A 13. B 14. B 15. C 16. B 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. C

三、日常交际用语

- 一、1. How do 2. your favorite 3. What time 4. weather like
5. What's doctor 6. how much 7. speak to 8. ready to
9. idea Where 10. good/great/wonderful time 11. How doing

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| 12. Thank you | 13. all same | 14. what time | 15. wrong with |
| 16. I'm sorry | 17. doesn't matter | 18. Excuse sorry | 19. shall we |
| 20. kind of | 21. where is | 22. the date | 23. How much |
| 24. speak to | 25. this is | 26. No thanks | 27. same to |
| 28. Thanks glad/pleased | | 29. When either | 30. think so |
| 31. Sorry thanks | 32. How like | 33. Why don't | 34. to hear |
| 35. have a | 36. work experience | 37. salary expect | 38. open apply |
| 39. goal be/become | | 40. interested openings/vacancies | |

二、(答案仅做参考)

1. Nothing special./ Nothing much./ Not too bad./ Good./ Fine./ It's OK.
2. Great. /Much better. / Quite well, thank you./So-so, thanks.
3. Let me introduce Mary to you. /Allow me to introduce Mary to you./ I'd like you to meet Mary./This is Mary. She is my friend.
4. Goodbye. / Bye-bye. /See you later. / So long.
5. I feel very weak. / I have a bad cold. / I have a headache.
6. Are you ready to order?/What about having something to eat?/Would you like something to eat?/May I take your order?
7. No, thank you./No more, thank you./Thank you. I have had enough./All right, but just a little.
8. I'd love to. /I'll be glad to./That's a good idea. /I'd love to, but I am very busy now./ Sorry. I'm afraid I can't, I've got to do my homework first. / I wish I could, but I have to meet my father.
9. Which(What) animal(s) do you like best(most)?/What is(are) your favorite animal(s)?
10. That's all right. /It doesn't matter./ That's nothing./Never mind.
11. Not at all./That's all right./You're welcome./My pleasure./Don't mention it.
12. No problem./Yes./Certainly./Sure./Of course./With pleasure.
13. What's the weather like (today)? / How's the weather (today)?
14. What day is today? /What day is it today? / What day of the week is it?
15. What's the date today? /What date is it today?

第二部分 答题策略

一、英语知识运用

专项训练一

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. C
11. C 12. C 13. C 14. D 15. C 16. B 17. D 18. A 19. C 20. A

专项训练二

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C
11. A 12. D 13. A 14. B 15. B 16. C 17. B 18. C 19. C 20. C

专项训练三

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A
11. C 12. C 13. B 14. C 15. B 16. C 17. B 18. C 19. B 20. A

专项训练四

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. B
11. B 12. C 13. A 14. B 15. B 16. B 17. A 18. A 19. C 20. B

专项训练五

1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. A
11. B 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. D 16. A 17. A 18. C 19. A 20. C

专项训练六

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. A
11. B 12. A 13. D 14. A 15. B 16. A 17. B 18. D 19. C 20. B

专项训练七

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C
11. B 12. A 13. B 14. B 15. B 16. A 17. C 18. C 19. C 20. D

专项训练八

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. A
11. C 12. D 13. A 14. D 15. D 16. A 17. D 18. C 19. C 20. D

专项训练九

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. A
11. B 12. B 13. C 14. D 15. A 16. B 17. C 18. B 19. C 20. D

专项训练十

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. B
11. C 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. A 16. B 17. B 18. A 19. B 20. A

二、阅读理解

A	1. B	2. A	3. C	4. C	5. D	B	1. B	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. D
C	1. A	2. C	3. B	4. C	5. A	D	1. B	2. A	3. B	4. C	5. B
E	1. C	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. B	F	1. A	2. D	3. A	4. C	5. C
G	1. D	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. D	H	1. A	2. D	3. A	4. B	5. A
I	1. A	2. B	3. C	4. C	5. C	J	1. A	2. C	3. C	4. B	5. B
K	1. C	2. C	3. D	4. A	5. B	L	1. D	2. A	3. C	4. D	5. B
M	1. C	2. A	3. B	4. B	5. C	N	1. D	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. C
O	1. D	2. D	3. A	4. B	5. C	P	1. D	2. D	3. C	4. B	5. A
Q	1. A	2. C	3. A	4. B	5. B	R	1. B	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. C
S	1. B	2. D	3. C	4. C	5. D	T	1. C	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. D

三、短文填空

A	1. member	2. what	3. her	4. women	5. customers
	6. to	7. more	8. food	9. remind	10. importance
B	1. that / which	2. bigger	3. be	4. having	5. that
	6. for	7. get	8. space	9. put	10. risk
C	1. used	2. singing	3. famous	4. much	5. less
	6. because	7. me	8. slowly	9. up	10. success
D	1. left	2. seen	3. cool	4. comfortable	5. bikes
	6. Fishing	7. successful	8. ourselves	9. arrived	10. but
E	1. traditional	2. greatest	3. himself	4. save	5. threw
	6. feed	7. From	8. eating	9. which/ that	10. quickly
F	1. stop	2. higher	3. learning	4. mountain	5. people's
	6. your	7. who/ that	8. scenery	9. in	10. pleasure
G	1. first	2. excited	3. find	4. help	5. seat
	6. that	7. feel	8. up	9. or	10. flight
H	1. woke	2. Internet	3. slept	4. National	5. worse
	6. who/that	7. scientist	8. need	9. few	10. of
I	1. vocational	2. appointment	3. chooses	4. more	5. communicate
	6. patient	7. friendly	8. her	9. member	10. for
J	1. stressed	2. If	3. restaurant	4. improve	5. weight
	6. what	7. jogging	8. worse	9. suggestions	10. to
K	1. engineer	2. taken	3. when/before	4. of	5. required
	6. you	7. later	8. important	9. that/which	10. field
L	1. worth	2. living	3. which/that	4. on	5. yourself
	6. Face	7. avoid	8. success	9. neither	10. heart
M	1. interesting	2. easily	3. plants	4. which/that	5. trips
	6. activities	7. member	8. with/against	9. realizing	10. natural

N	1. used	2. helpful	3. understood	4. but	5. congratulations
	6. Nodding	7. meanings	8. you	9. with	10. comfortable
O	1. in	2. spent	3. including	4. that	5. gradually
	6. who/that	7. signs	8. special	9. ourselves	10. difference
P	1. living	2. pollution	3. chance	4. village	5. traffic
	6. fresh	7. friendly	8. hear	9. running	10. What
Q	1. advice	2. suggestions	3. it	4. be	5. Chinese
	6. possible	7. learn	8. remember	9. easily	10. to
R	1. October	2. when	3. joined	4. playing	5. hard
	6. won	7. In	8. women's	9. our	10. learn
S	1. what	2. for	3. at	4. confidence	5. yourself
	6. easier	7. are	8. Talk	9. Internet	10. believe
T	1. are	2. Respect	3. their	4. with	5. Sharing
	6. sadness	7. Help	8. if	9. trouble	10. friendly

四、根据情景内容补全对话

一、补全对话（每空只能填一个单词）

A	1. graduate	2. be	3. major	4. skills	5. idea
B	1. that	2. This	3. is	4. love /like	5. where
C	1. book/reserve	2. What's	3. When	4. Where	5. Thank
D	1. Who	2. How	3. old	4. look	5. like
E	1. What's	2. How	3. often	4. Whom/Who	5. Why
F	1. Nice/Glad/Pleased	2. happy/glad/pleased	3. how	4. experience	5. application
G	1. down	2. meet	3. graduate	4. major	5. When
H	1. How/What	2. about	3. When	4. think	5. of
I	1. This	2. is	3. How	4. When	5. See
J	1. What	2. name	3. course	4. Thanks	5. welcome
K	1. applying	2. education	3. graduated	4. experience	5. Thanks
L	1. help	2. booked	3. email	4. address	5. right
M	1. help	2. How/ What	3. much	4. course	5. Have
N	1. this	2. appointment	3. with	4. available/free	5. Thank
O	1. How	2. like / love	3. When	4. of	5. See
P	1. you	2. order	3. specialties	4. drink	5. sorry

二、（答案仅做参考）

A

1. Could/ May I speak to Jack please/ Is that Jack/ Is that Jack speaking

2. Who is that/ Who is calling/ Who is speaking
3. Would you like to come (to my party)
4. I'm afraid I can't /I won't be able to make it/I'm sorry to turn you down
5. Have a good time/ Have a good trip

B

1. What are you going to do/What about you
2. What sport do you like best/What's your favorite sport
3. Where will you play it
4. How will you go there
5. The same to you/Thank you

C

1. I'd like to buy a white shirt/ I want to buy a white shirt/ I'm looking for a white shirt
2. What size do you want/ take
3. Can/May I try it on
4. How much is it/ How much does it cost/ What's the price of it/ What's the charge for it
5. I will take it

D

1. What's wrong/ the matter/ the trouble with you
2. Let me take your temperature
3. How long have you been like this
4. Nothing serious/Not serious
5. Thank you (very much)/Thanks a lot

E

1. How can I get there/ Can you tell me how to get there/ Can you tell me how I can get there
2. How far is it from here
3. Which bus should I take/ Which bus can I take
4. How long does it take (me to get there)
5. Thank you (very much)/Thanks a lot/Thanks for your help

F

1. (I'm sorry,) I don't know. / (I'm sorry,) I have no idea. / (I'm sorry,) I'm new here.
2. Is there a hotel near here/nearby?
3. How far is it from here?/ How far is it?
4. How can I get(arrive) there? / How can I get to / arrive at / reach the hotel?

5. Thank you (very much). / Thanks (a lot). / Many thanks.

G

1. Take a seat, please. / Be seated, please. / Sit down, please.
2. May I take your order? / Are you ready to order? / Would you like something to eat?
3. Would you like something to drink? / Will you have something to drink? / What would you like to drink?
4. Anything else? / Would you like anything else?
5. Can I have the bill now?

H

1. Good morning.
2. I have a cold. / I have got a fever. / I have a pain in my head. / There is something wrong with my nose.
3. For two days. / Since last night.
4. Is it serious? / Is there anything wrong (with me)?
5. Thank you. / Thanks a lot. / Thanks.

I

1. Can I help you? / What can I do for you? / May I help you? / Is there anything (that) I can do for you?
2. What size does he/your son wear/take? / What size?
3. How much is it? / How much does it cost? / What's the price of it?
4. I'll take / have / get it.
5. You're welcome. / That's all right. / Not at all. / It's my pleasure.

J

1. How are you (doing)?
2. I'd love/ like to
3. why don't you ask Jenny / why not ask Jenny / how(what) about Jenny
4. Sure/ Of course / No problem/ Certainly
5. enjoy yourself. / have fun. / have a good/ nice/ great/ wonderful time.

K

1. Hello/ Good morning/ Good afternoon
2. what experience do you have/ what experience have you got
3. Do you want to work full-time or part-time
4. what are your salary expectations/ how much are you looking for

5. You are welcome/It's my pleasure/Don't mention it

五、职场应用 (答案不唯一)

(一)

Welcome to our restaurant. We provide \$ 8 Lunch Buffet from 11:30 am to 2:00 pm during January. You can taste great Indian food here from Monday to Friday. You can also enjoy a free glass of house wine to stay warm.

We are providing new service. You can visit our website *order.baluch-restaurant.com* to order online. You choose your favorite dishes and we deliver. You may pay cash on delivery.

All the service is available at our Queens and Tribeca branches.

Enjoy your meal!

(二)

We did a survey on skipping classes at some universities. To our surprise, there are about 77 percent of the students who have ever been absent from classes. 30 percent of them think classes are too boring and 22 percent of them skip classes to sleep. I hope teachers at the universities can try more ways to make classes lively and interesting. I want to tell the students who skip classes for sleeping to go to bed early and not to stay up too late. So they can be energetic in classes. As for the students who skip classes to take part in entertainment or club activities, I advise them to do the activities after classes.

(三)

任务一

- (1) Beijing (2) All over Asia (3) 60 (4) A five-star chef
(5) Less than ¥ 300

任务二

I booked six tables at Guangming Restaurant. It is near our company. We can walk there after meeting. They have a combination of different food styles, such as Chinese food, Japanese food, pizza and barbecue. Everyone can find some food that they love. And they can enjoy Coke, wine, beer and other soft drinks. Of course, Guangming Restaurant has some five-star chefs. I believe they can satisfy different tastes of the people from all over Asia. And the price is reasonable. It's about 280 yuan per person. I think it is very suitable for us. What do you think of it?

(四)

任务一

- (1) cooking (2) 30 (3) 15 (4) 25 (5) music

任务二

(以 cooking club 为例)

Do you enjoy delicious food?

Do you enjoy delicious food? Do you want to make delicious food for your family and friends? Cooking Club is inviting new members to experience the pleasure of cooking. Come and join us every Sunday afternoon at Room 301, No. 2 Teaching Building. You will have a good chance to taste delicious food.

It's free to be a member of the club.
Good food brings good life!
Please contact us at 67845127.
Come to [www. Cookingclub.com.cn](http://www.Cookingclub.com.cn) for more!

(五)

任务一

(1) supervision (2) cooked (3) two or three days' (4) 5:30 (5) 50

任务二

Join us – Summer Care Center

Aims
The summer holiday is coming. We will set up a Summer Care Center to give the children a meaningful holiday and help the parents take care of the children.

When <u>Mon.-Fri.</u> 8:00 am - 5:30 pm	Where <u>Room 201</u> Community Center
--	---



Cost
50 yuan/ day

Special offer
We will offer homework supervision and invite some college volunteers to help your children study for the new term. We will also organize some outdoor activities, like swimming, hiking and even some trips to give the children chances to have different holiday experience. If the parents are too busy to cook lunch for the children, we will offer cooked lunch to them.

For more information, please call us at 15498762148.

(六)

任务一

1. 76% / Seventy-six percent 2. baseball 3. football 4. interests
5. 13% / thirteen percent

任务二

We did a survey about the sports students often do and the factors they think about most.

According to the survey, we know that 76% of the students often play badminton. 73% of the students often play table tennis. Badminton and table tennis are popular with the students. 60% of the students often play basketball, which is the closest to playing football. Most students are interested in basketball and football. The number of the students who play tennis, volleyball and baseball is less than others. I think the reason is that there are few courts(球场) where students can do them.

From the chart, we also know that interests are the most important factor that most students think about when they do sports, not games, which makes us feel happy.

Doing sports is important for anyone. It can make us keep healthy and happy. I do hope everyone of us will have a good habit of doing sports.

(七)

Hello, everyone. Welcome to our club. We provide one-to-one tennis training during the summer holiday. You can learn to play tennis from 2:00 pm to 5:00 pm every day. We have experienced coaches who can give you the best instruction. You need to pay 150 yuan per hour for it. Tennis rackets are supplied for free. Drinks and fruits will be ready for you during breaks. If you want to enjoy your holiday and learn something, come to our club. If you want to learn more about the activities, please call us at 8756038 at any time.

(八)

任务一

(1) flu (2) 4:00 pm (3) lecture (4) Doctor Liu (5) nursing

任务二

Dear Mr. Ge,

We would like to invite you to be present at a lecture. We will feel much honored if you could come. The lecture is about how to prevent the flu. Doctor Liu has been invited to give us the lecture. It will start at 4:00 pm on Friday afternoon in our school lecture hall. Students majoring in nursing will attend the lecture. I believe everyone who attend the lecture will get more knowledge on health.

We sincerely hope you can attend it. We are looking forward to seeing you.

Yours,
Jenny

(九)

任务一

1. 12,000 2. 9,000 3. 11 4. Beijing 5. 55.3

任务二

According to a survey about the employment of 300,000 college graduates, we have some findings. After graduation, 11% of college students continue their study, for they want to get further education. About 9,000 graduates are so independent that they will start their own business. Moreover, 5% of the graduates have their own choices. They may want to do

something special. Some students are not lucky enough, and they are still looking for jobs. We're glad to see 77% of the graduates have found full-time jobs. When they choose jobs, most graduates will go to some cities with well-developed business and industry. The cities also hold a leading place in China's arts, sciences and education. Beijing is the most popular city for them. Other popular cities are Shanghai, Shenzhen, Hangzhou and Tianjin.

(十)

任务一

1. Simon 2. 1503 3. hair 4. air fresher 5. make up

任务二

Good morning, everyone! Yesterday I received a complaint from Mrs. Stevenson. She lived in Room 1503 and she was not satisfied with the room. She said her room was smelly and there was some hair on the bed. I apologized to her for the inconvenience at once and sent a room attendant to make up the bed for her again. Of course, the room attendant also brought air fresher for her. I can't expect such things will happen in our hotel. So I want to say we should often open the windows to make some fresh air come in and make up the bed carefully. We must deal with the complaints quickly and politely. We should try our best to make our guests feel at home.

第三部分 综合训练

综合训练一

一、英语知识运用

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. B | 4. A | 5. A |
| 6. B | 7. A | 8. B | 9. B | 10. A |
| 11. B | 12. C | 13. A | 14. B | 15. A |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. D | 19. A | 20. C |
| 21. C | 22. A | 23. A | 24. A | 25. B |
| 26. C | 27. A | 28. A | 29. D | 30. A |

二、阅读理解

- A 31. C 32. B 33. D 34. D 35. A
 B 36. B 37. C 38. D 39. A 40. B

三、短文填空

41. healthy 42. lifestyle 43. us 44. favorite/favourite 45. water
 46. of 47. to 48. eating 49. spend 50. jogging

四、根据情景内容补全对话（答案不唯一）

51. some steak/some rice...

52. would you like something to drink/will you have something to drink...

53. Italian/French/Italian dressing/French dressing./Neither./Neither of them...

54. What kind of drink would you like/What would you like to drink/How about drinks/What about drinks/Would you like something to drink/Anything to drink...

55. You are welcome/That's all right/It's my pleasure...

五、职场应用

Dear Linda,

How are you doing these days? I have good news for you. I've got two tickets for a grand concert on Christmas Eve by Lang Lang, the world-famous pianist. I'd like to invite you to be present at the concert on December 24th. It will start at 19:00 and last two hours. It will be held in MasterCard Center, which is at No. 69 Fuxing Road, Haidian District, Beijing.

I do hope that you can come and enjoy the concert with me. I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Sara

综合训练二

一、英语知识运用

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. A | 3. B | 4. D | 5. D |
| 6. D | 7. D | 8. A | 9. A | 10. C |
| 11. C | 12. B | 13. A | 14. D | 15. A |
| 16. D | 17. A | 18. B | 19. B | 20. B |
| 21. A | 22. C | 23. B | 24. C | 25. B |
| 26. A | 27. B | 28. D | 29. C | 30. B |

二、阅读理解

- A 31. D 32. B 33. C 34. C 35. B
B 36. C 37. B 38. C 39. C 40. A

三、短文填空

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| 41. remember | 42. information | 43. advice/suggestions | 44. weeks | 45. fun |
| 46. studying | 47. up | 48. feel | 49. worry | 50. relaxed |

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. meet 52. Where 53. major 54. experience 55. here

五、职场应用

任务一

56. computer programmer 57. Shandong University 58. English, French
59. Work experience 60. engineering design

任务二

Dear Mr. Smith,

How are you? Recently we have interviewed some applicants. One applicant called Wang Li is excellent among them. I am eager to recommend this outstanding young man to our company.

Wang Li graduated from Shandong University. It is very important for our company that he can speak English fluently and know a little French. He had some experience in teaching computer science in a high school. He once took part in the first engineering design of city general business computer network system, which shows that he is skilled at writing computer programs. I think he is suitable for the position as a computer programmer.

Yours,
John

综合训练三

一、英语知识运用

1. D	2. C	3. C	4. D	5. B
6. B	7. D	8. D	9. D	10. D
11. C	12. B	13. A	14. A	15. B
16. D	17. A	18. C	19. A	20. D
21. B	22. D	23. B	24. B	25. A
26. D	27. D	28. A	29. C	30. D

二、阅读理解

A 31. B 32. A 33. D 34. C 35. C
B 36. B 37. C 38. D 39. C 40. C

三、短文填空

- | | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|------------|--------------|
| 41. as | 42. different | 43. understand | 44. repeat | 45. miss |
| 46. homework | 47. seriously | 48. illness | 49. on | 50. impolite |

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. What 52. like 53. about 54. How 55. Thank

五、职场应用

Notice

To enhance team spirit and express thanks to all the staff, our company is to hold the annual meeting at 4:00 pm on Dec. 24th in Blue Horizon International Hotel. All the staff are required to attend the meeting on time. At the meeting, six department managers are scheduled to give reports on their work and state the plan for next year. The general manager will commend the outstanding staff of this year. As usual, we will have dinner together. But before dinner, we will play some interesting games. The winners will get nice gifts.

Wish everyone a good time.

Planning Department
December 18th

综合训练四

一、英语知识运用

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. A | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. A | 8. D | 9. A | 10. A |
| 11. A | 12. D | 13. B | 14. B | 15. A |
| 16. C | 17. B | 18. B | 19. A | 20. C |
| 21. A | 22. B | 23. C | 24. C | 25. C |
| 26. C | 27. D | 28. D | 29. D | 30. C |

二、阅读理解

- A** 31. D 32. A 33. A 34. C 35. C
B 36. B 37. C 38. D 39. A 40. A

三、短文填空

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| 41. richest | 42. shown | 43. Internet | 44. China | 45. called |
| 46. computers | 47. up | 48. business | 49. developed | 50. company |

四、根据情景内容补全对话

51. What 52. matter/trouble/problem 53. in 54. about 55. Thank

五、职场应用

任务一

56. the Great Wall 57. 11,850 58. 6 59. 3 60. seafood

任务二

Dear Mr. Black,

I'm glad to discuss your travel plan with you. It would be wonderful if you can come to China on Jan 24. I advise you to go to Hainan on Jan 25 to view the sea and taste the seafood, because the weather there is warm even if it's in winter. The Confucius Temple is famous around the world. It's in Qufu, Shandong Province. On Jan 26, you can fly to Jinan, and then go to Qufu by train. After visiting the Confucius Temple, you stay in Qufu for one night. The next day, you take a high-speed rail to Beijing. The Great Wall is waiting for you there. Our traditional festival—the Spring Festival will be celebrated on Jan 28. You can spend the festival with people in Beijing. You can make dumplings, play fireworks and so on. On Jan 29, you fly back to America. The total cost may be less than 24,000 yuan.

Look forward to your reply.

Yours,
Li Hua